



unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes

Version 9

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes

Date: 2020-05-01

Version: 9

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories

Date: 2020-04-24

Version: 8

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes

Copyright © 2020 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License (CC BY-SA). To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from <https://openbiblestories.org>". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at <https://unfoldingword.org/contact/>.

Table of Contents

Open Bible Stories Translation Notes	10
1. The Creation	11
2. Sin Enters the World	23
3. The Flood	32
4. God's Covenant with Abraham	40
5. The Son of Promise	47
6. God Provides for Isaac	55
7. God Blesses Jacob	59
8. God Saves Joseph and His Family	67
9. God Calls Moses	77
10. The Ten Plagues	86
11. The Passover	94
12. The Exodus	99
13. God's Covenant with Israel	108
14. Wandering in the Wilderness	119
15. The Promised Land	131
16. The Deliverers	140
17. God's Covenant with David	153
18. The Divided Kingdom	164
19. The Prophets	172
20. The Exile and Return	185
21. God Promises the Messiah	194
22. The Birth of John	203
23. The Birth of Jesus	210
24. John Baptizes Jesus	219
25. Satan Tempts Jesus	227
26. Jesus Starts His Ministry	234
27. The Story of the Good Samaritan	241
28. The Rich Young Ruler	250
29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant	258
30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People	266
31. Jesus Walks on Water	271
32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman	275
33. The Story of the Farmer	284
34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories	290
35. The Story of the Compassionate Father	298
36. The Transfiguration	306
37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead	310
38. Jesus Is Betrayed	318
39. Jesus Is Put on Trial	329
40. Jesus Is Crucified	337
41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead	344
42. Jesus Returns to Heaven	349

43. The Church Begins	356
44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar	365
45. Stephen and Philip	372
46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus	380
47. Paul and Silas in Philippi	388
48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah	397
49. God's New Covenant	406
50. Jesus Returns	415
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	427
Abstract Nouns	428
Active or Passive	430
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	433
Background Information	436
Connect - Background Information	439
Connect - Contrast Relationship	442
Connect - Exception Clauses	444
Connect - Factual Conditions	446
Connect - Goal (Purpose) Relationship	448
Connect - Hypothetical Conditions	451
Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship	453
Connect - Sequential Time Relationship	455
Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship	457
Connecting Words and Phrases	459
Direct and Indirect Quotations	463
Doublet	465
Ellipsis	467
End of Story	469
Euphemism	471
Exclamations	473
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	475
First, Second or Third Person	477
Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural	479
Forms of You	481
Go and Come	482
How to Translate Names	484
Hyperbole	488
Hypothetical Situations	492
Idiom	495
Imperatives - Other Uses	497
Introduction of a New Event	500
Introduction of New and Old Participants	503
Irony	506
Litotes	509
Merism	511
Metaphor	513
Metonymy	519

Nominal Adjectives	521
Numbers	523
Order of Events	526
Parables	528
Possession	530
Pronouns	533
Proverbs	535
Quotes within Quotes	537
Rhetorical Question	540
Simile	543
Symbolic Action	546
Symbolic Language	548
Synecdoche	550
Translate Unknowns	552
Translating Son and Father	555
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	557
Aaron	558
Abraham, Abram	559
Adam	560
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	561
Ahab	562
altar	563
Amorite	564
angel, archangel	565
apostle, apostleship	567
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	568
Baal	569
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	570
baptize, baptized, baptism	571
Barnabas	572
Bathsheba	573
beg, beggar, needy	574
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	575
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	577
betray, betrayer	578
bless, blessed, blessing	579
blood	581
Caleb	582
Canaan, Canaanite	583
chariot, charioteers	584
Christ, Messiah	585
Christian	587
church, Church	588
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	590
covenant	592
cross	594

crucify, crucified	595
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	596
curse, cursed, cursing	598
David	599
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	600
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	601
demon-possessed	602
descend, descendant	603
die, dead, deadly, death,	604
disciple	606
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious	608
dream	609
Egypt, Egyptian	610
Elijah	611
Esau	612
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	613
Eve	615
evil, wicked, unpleasant	616
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	618
faith	619
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	620
fast, fasting	622
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	623
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	625
Galilee, Galilean	626
Gibeon, Gibeonite	627
Gideon	628
glory, glorious, glorify	629
God	631
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	633
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	635
good news, gospel	637
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	639
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	641
guilt, guilty	642
Hagar	643
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	644
hell, lake of fire	646
high priest, chief priests	647
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	649
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	651
humble, humbled, humility	653
inherit, inheritance, heir	654
innocent	655
Isaac	656
Isaiah	657

Ishmael, Ishmaelite	658
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	659
Israel, Israelites	660
Jeremiah	662
Jericho	663
Jeroboam	664
Jerusalem	665
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	667
Jew, Jewish	669
Jewish authorities, Jewish leader	670
John (the apostle)	671
John (the Baptist)	672
Jordan River, Jordan	673
Joseph (NT)	674
Joseph (OT)	675
Joshua	676
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	677
Judah, kingdom of Judah	679
Judas Iscariot	680
judge, judgment	681
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	683
King of the Jews	685
king, kingdom, kingship	686
kingdom	687
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	689
kingdom of Israel	691
lamb, Lamb of God	692
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	694
Lazarus	696
life, live, living, alive	697
lord, Lord, master, sir	699
love, beloved	701
Mary, the mother of Jesus	703
mercy, merciful	704
Midian, Midianite	706
miracle, wonder, sign	707
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	709
Moses	710
Naaman	711
Nathan	712
Nazareth, Nazarene	713
Nebuchadnezzar	714
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile	715
Noah	716
obey, obedient	717
Passover	718

Paul, Saul	719
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	720
people, people group,	721
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	723
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas	724
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	725
Philippi, Philippians	726
Pilate	727
power, powerful, powerfully	728
praise, praised, praiseworthy	730
pray, prayer	731
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	732
priest, priesthood	734
promise, promised	736
Promised Land	737
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	738
prostrate, worship	740
proud, pride, prideful	741
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	742
Rahab	743
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	744
Rebekah	746
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	747
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	748
Rehoboam	749
repent, repentance	750
resurrection	751
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	752
Rome, Roman	754
Sabbath	755
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	756
Samaria, Samaritan	758
Sarah, Sarai	759
Satan, devil, evil one	760
Saul (OT)	762
save, saved, safe, salvation	763
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	765
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	766
shepherd, chief shepherd	768
Silas, Silvanus	770
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	771
Sinai, Mount Sinai	773
Solomon	774
son	775
Son of God, the Son	777
spirit, spiritual	779

suffer, suffering	781
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,	783
teacher, Teacher	785
temple	786
tempt, temptation	788
Ten Commandments	789
tent of meeting	790
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	791
true, truth	793
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	795
Uriah	796
virgin, virginity	797
wise, wisdom	798
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	799
Yahweh	801
Zechariah (NT)	803
Contributors	804
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes Contributors	804
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Contributors	804
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	804
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	804



Open Bible Stories Translation Notes

1. The Creation

01:00

The Creation

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the world" or "How did God make the world?"

01:01

This is how God made everything in **the beginning**. He **created the universe** and everything in it in six days. After God created **the earth** it was **dark** and **empty** because **he had not yet formed anything in it**. But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.

the beginning

This could mean 'the beginning of all things,' before anything existed except God.

created

This term here means that God made it from nothing.

the universe

This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.

the earth

The word **earth** refers to the whole world that people live on.

dark

It was completely dark. There was no light at all, since God had not yet created light.

empty

God had not yet created anything except for the bare earth covered by water.

he had not yet formed anything in it

There were no distinguishing features—just water covering everything.

God's Spirit

The Spirit of God, sometimes called the Holy Spirit, was present in the beginning, moving freely over the earth in order to create all that he had planned to do.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

01:02

Then God said, "Let there be light!" And there was light. God saw that the light **was good** and called it "day." He separated it from the darkness, which he called "night." God created the light on the first day of **creation**.

God said

God created light by means of a simple verbal command.

Then God said, "Let there be light!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then God said that there should be light." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Let there be light!

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: "There shall be light." (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

light

This was a special light that God created. The sun was not created until later.

was good

This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.

creation

This word is used here to refer to the six-day period during which God brought into being everything that exists.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

01:03

On **the second day** of creation, God said, "**Let there be an expanse above the waters.**" And there was an expanse. God called this expanse "**sky.**"

the second day

God's work of creation was orderly, purposeful, and sequential. The things he created each day built upon and depended on the acts of the previous days.

Let there be an expanse above the waters

God created the sky by speaking a command.

sky

This term refers to all of the space above the earth, including the air we breathe and the heavens.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

01:04

On **the third day**, God said, “**Let the water come together in one place and the dry land appear.**” He called the dry land “**earth,**” and he called the water “seas.” God saw that what he had **created** was good.

the third day

The next in the series of orderly days in which God prepared the earth for life

Let the water come together in one place and the dry land appear

God created the dry land by speaking a command.

earth

This word is used here to refer to dirt or soil, which is what dry land is made of.

created

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

01:05

Then God said, “Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants.” And that is what happened. God saw that what he had **created was good.**

Then God said, “Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God said that the earth should produce all kinds of trees and plants.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

God said

God created all vegetation by speaking a command.

Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: "The earth will produce all kinds of trees and plants." (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

all kinds

The many different species, or types, of plants and trees.

created

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

was good

This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

01:06

On **the fourth day** of creation, God said, "**Let there be lights in the sky.**" And the sun, the moon, and the stars appeared. God made them to give **light** to the earth and to mark **day and night, seasons and years**. God saw that what he had **created** was good.

the fourth day

the next in the orderly series of days in which God created

Let there be lights in the sky

God created the sun, moon, and stars by speaking a command.

light

Shining objects in the sky now provided light for the earth.

day and night, seasons and years

God created different lights to mark days, nights, seasons, and years. He divides time periods which are indicated by the positions of the lights. These periods are cyclical and continue until the end of time.

created

This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

Translation Words

- God
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
-

01:07

On **the fifth day**, God said, “**Let living things fill the waters, and birds fly in the sky.**” This is how he made **everything that swims** in the water and **all the birds**. God saw that **it was good**, and he **blessed them**.

the fifth day

God continues his orderly progression of creation that he started during the previous four days.

Let living things fill the waters, and birds fly in the sky

God created water creatures and the birds by speaking a command.

everything that swims

God not only made fish, but every kind of living thing that lives in the waters. Every one exists because God chose to create it.

all the birds

God did not make just one kind of bird, but all of the amazing variety of shapes, sizes, colors, and kinds of birds.

it was good

This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God’s wise plan and purpose.

blessed them

God speaks his desire that they would prosper and that things would go well for them in the world in which he had placed them.

Translation Words

- God
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
 - bless, blessed, blessing
-

01:08

On **the sixth day** of creation, God said, “**Let there be all kinds of land animals!**” And it happened just like God said. Some were **farm animals**, some **crawled on the ground**, and some were **wild**. And God saw that **it was good**.

the sixth day

the next event in a continuing, orderly progression of days and creative acts

Let there be all kinds of land animals!

The result of this command happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as: “There will be all kinds of land animals!” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

all kinds

This indicates a great variety, but also order.

land animals

Every kind of animal that lived on the land, as opposed to the birds, or animals that live in the seas.

farm animals

The kinds of land animals that commonly live peacefully with people—as in tame, or domesticated, animals.

crawled on the ground

This probably includes reptiles and possibly insects.

wild

The kinds of animals that do not normally live peacefully with people, usually because they are afraid of people, or dangerous to them.

it was good

This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God’s wise plan and purpose.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

01:09

Then God said, “**Let us make** human beings **in our image to be like us**. They will **rule over** the earth and all the animals.”

Let us make

This indicates God’s deliberate, willful decision to create man in a particular way for a particular purpose. You could translate this as: “We will make.”

us...our...us

The Bible teaches that there is one God, but the Old Testament word **God** is a plural form, and God uses plural pronouns when speaking to himself. Some understand this as a special way of speaking that expresses God’s majesty, and others understand this as God the Father speaking to the Son and the Spirit, who are all God. (See: [Pronouns](#))

in our image

An image is a physical representation of someone or something. Humans were made in such a way that we display or represent some of the qualities or traits of God.

in our image to be like us

The two phrases, **in our image** and **like us** are a doublet. They means almost the same thing. Together, they emphasize that man was to be very much like God, although not exactly the same. (See: [Doublet](#))

like us

Humans share some of God’s characteristics, but not all of his qualities. This phrase should be translated with words that show man is similar to God, but not equal with him, nor the same as he is.

rule over

God gave people the right and power to manage, guide, and control how the earth and the animals will be used.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

01:10

So God **took some soil, formed it** into **a man**, and **breathed life** into him. This man’s name was **Adam**. God planted **a large garden** where Adam could live, and put him there **to care for it**.

took some soil

God made man from the dust, or dry soil from the ground. This word should probably be different from the general word used for earth.

formed it

This word expresses that God personally fashioned the man in the same way that a person shapes something with his hands. Make sure that a different word from 'create' is used. Note that this is very different from how he created everything else through a simple spoken command.

a man

Only the man was made at this time; the woman was made later by a different method.

breathed life

This phrase expresses God's very personal, intimate action as he transferred life from himself into Adam's body, comparing this to how a human being breathes out air.

life

In this event, God breathed both physical and spiritual life into the man.

Adam

Adam's name is the same as the Old Testament word for 'man,' and similar to the word for **soil**, the substance from which he was formed.

a large garden

An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose—usually to produce food or to provide beauty.

to care for it

To maintain the garden by preparing soil, planting, tending, and harvesting.

Translation Words

- God
 - life, live, living, alive
 - Adam
-

01:11

In the middle of the garden, God planted two special trees—**the tree of life** and **the tree of the knowledge of good and evil**. God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he **would die**.

In the middle

The central location emphasizes the importance of the two trees.

the garden

An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose—usually to produce food or to provide beauty.

the tree of life

Anyone who ate fruit from this tree would never die.

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

The fruit of this tree could enable a person to know both good and evil.

knowledge

To know or understand by personal experience.

good and evil

Evil is the opposite of **good**. Just as **good** refers to what is pleasing to God, **evil** refers to everything that is not pleasing to God.

would die

In this instance, he would die both physically and spiritually.

Translation Words

- God
 - life, live, living, alive
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
 - Adam
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

01:12

Then God said, "It is **not good** for man to be **alone**." But none of the animals could be **Adam's helper**.

not good

This is the first time that anything in creation was not good. It means it was 'not yet good' because God was not finished with the creation of humans.

alone

Adam was the only human, with no possibility of a relationship with another person, and unable to have children and multiply.

Adam's helper

There was no one who was similar enough to Adam to join with him to accomplish the task that God gave to him. None of the animals could do this.

Translation Words

- God

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
 - Adam
-

01:13

So God made Adam fall into **a deep sleep**. Then God **took one of Adam's ribs and made** it into **a woman** and **brought her to him**.

a deep sleep

This was a deeper sleep than normal.

took one of Adam's ribs and made

The verbs indicate God's very personal act of removing the rib from Adam and shaping it into a woman.

a woman

She was the first woman, the female version of human beings that was missing until now.

brought her to him

God personally introduced them. He presented the woman to Adam, almost like offering a special gift.

Translation Words

- God
 - Adam
-

01:14

When Adam saw her, he said, "**At last!** This one is **like me!** Let her be called '**Woman,**' for she was **made from Man.**" This is why **a man leaves** his father and mother and **becomes one** with his wife.

At last!

Adam's exclamation indicates that he had been waiting for something like the woman.

like me

The woman was the same type of being as Adam, even though there were important differences between them.

Woman

This word is the feminine form of the word 'man.'

made from Man

The woman was formed directly from Adam's own body.

a man leaves

This is stated in the present tense to indicate what would become the normal situation in the future. Adam did not have a mother or father, but all other men would.

becomes one

The husband and wife will share an intimate bond of unity and a commitment to one another that will surpass their relationships to anyone else. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- [Adam](#)
-

01:15

God made man and woman **in his own image**. He blessed them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth!" And God saw that everything he had made was **very good**, and he was very pleased with all of it. This all happened on the sixth day of **creation**.

God made

God formed the man and the woman in a very personal way.

in his own image

An image is a physical representation of someone or something. God made people to display or represent some of his qualities and traits, but not to be equal to him.

very good

More intense than the **it was good** statements on previous days. **Very good** refers to all of creation, not just the man and the woman. Everything was exactly as God intended it to be.

creation

This word is used here to refer to the six-day period during which God made everything that exists.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

01:16

When **the seventh day** came, God had **finished all the work that he had been doing**. He **blessed the seventh day** and **made it holy** because on this day he stopped creating things. This is how God created **the universe** and everything in it.

the seventh day

The next day after the six days of creation were completed.

finished all the work that he had been doing

Specifically, God finished the work of creation. He still performs other work.

blessed the seventh day

God had a special, positive plan for the seventh day, and for every seventh day to follow.

made it holy

That is, God 'set apart' the day as a special day. It was not to be used in the same way as the other six days of the week.

the universe

This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 1-2

Translation Words

- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

2. Sin Enters the World

02:00

Sin Enters the World

This title can also be translated as: "About how people began to sin" or "How did people begin to sin?"

02:01

Adam and his wife were very happy living in **the beautiful garden** God had made for them. Neither of them wore clothes, but this did not cause them to feel any **shame** because there was no sin in the world. They often walked in the garden and **talked with God**.

the beautiful garden

This refers to a special collection of trees and plants that God prepared for Adam and Eve to enjoy and from which to eat. This should be the same word that was used in [01:11](#). See how you translated it there.

shame

the feeling that comes with knowing we have sinned or that we fall short in some way

talked with God

The word for **talk** should be the same as would be used to refer to talking to a human being. God may have taken a physical form to talk to the man and the woman since the text indicates that they talked to him face-to-face.

Translation Words

- [Adam](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

02:02

But there was **a snake** in the garden. He was very **crafty**. **He asked the woman, "Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?"**

a snake

This refers to an elongated, legless creature that now moves by wiggling on its belly. Although later on in the story it is revealed that Satan spoke through the snake, this should not be said here in this frame.

crafty

clever and sly, with the intent to deceive

He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He asked the woman if God had really told her not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?

This is a rhetorical question. The snake asked the woman whether God actually said not to eat from any of the trees in the garden. But he was only pretending that he didn't know what God had said because he wanted to create doubt in the woman's mind. He wanted her to question God's goodness. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. God had given this command to both the man and the woman. (See: [Pronouns](#))

the fruit from any of the trees

This refers to all of the various types of fruit from each of the different trees in the garden.

Translation Words

• [God](#)

02:03

The woman answered, “God told us we could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told us, ‘If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die.’”

The woman answered, “God told us we could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told us, ‘If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die.’”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The woman answered that God had told them that they could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and that if they ate that fruit or even touched it, they would die.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

If you eat that fruit or even touch it, you will die

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. God had given this command to both the man and the woman. (See: [Pronouns](#))

the fruit

We don't know what kind of fruit this was. We only know that it grew on this tree. If possible, it is best to use a general word for fruit here, and not a word for a specific kind of fruit.

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

The woman correctly understood that they were not allowed to eat from this one tree that would enable them to understand evil as well as good.

you will die

Use your ordinary word for death, for a person's physical life to end. Don't avoid the term just because the thought of death sounds too harsh.

Translation Words

- God
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

02:04

The snake responded to the woman, "That is not true! You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."

The snake responded to the woman, "That is not true! You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "The snake responded to the woman that this was not true! They would not die. God just knew that as soon as they ate it, they would be like God and would understand good and evil like he does." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the plural form. Satan was speaking about what would happen to both the man and the woman. (See: [Pronouns](#))

like God

The man and the woman were already made in the likeness of God. The snake is suggesting that the woman would be more like God if she understood evil. However, God never intended for her to have this knowledge.

will understand good and evil

To know from personal experience what things are good and what things are bad, or being able to know whether something is good or bad.

good and evil

This is a merism. **Good** and **evil** are two extremes that represent everything in between them. Satan is saying that they would understand everything about what is right and wrong. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words

- true, truth
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

02:05

The woman saw that the fruit was beautiful and looked delicious. She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it. Then she gave some to her husband, **who was with her**, and he ate it too.

wise

The woman wanted to have insight and understanding like the snake seemed to have, and like God has.

who was with her

This is important information because it shows that the man was present when the woman made the decision to eat the fruit.

Translation Words

- [wise, wisdom](#)
-

02:06

Suddenly, **their eyes were opened** and **they realized they were naked**. **They tried to cover their bodies** by sewing leaves together to make clothes.

their eyes were opened

This expression means they now understood something for the first time. This could be translated as: "they saw things differently." In your language, there may be an expression with similar meaning that you could use to translate this. (See: [Idiom](#))

they realized they were naked

After the man and the woman disobeyed God, they felt ashamed that they were naked. That is why they used leaves to try to cover their naked bodies.

They tried to cover their bodies

The man and the woman tried to cover their bodies in order to hide from God because they were ashamed that they were naked. You may want to make that explicit. Alternate translation: "They were ashamed that they were naked, and tried to cover their bodies to hide from God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

02:07

Then the man and his wife heard the sound of **God walking** through the garden. They both hid from God. **Then God called to the man, "Where are you?" Adam replied, "I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked. So I hid."**

God walking

It seems that God regularly came to the garden to walk and talk with the man and the woman. We do not know what this looked like. If it is possible, it is best to use the same word that would be used to talk about a person walking.

Then God called to the man, "Where are you?"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then God called to the man and asked him where he was." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Where are you?

This is a rhetorical question. God already knew the answer to this question. The purpose of the question was to force the man and the woman to explain why they were hiding. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the singular form. God was speaking only to the man. (See: [Pronouns](#))

Adam replied, "I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked. So I hid."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Adam replied that he heard God walking in the garden, and was afraid because he was naked. So he hid." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Adam](#)
-

02:08

Then God asked, "Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?" The man answered, "You gave me this woman, and **she gave me the fruit.**" **Then God asked the woman, "What have you done?"** The woman replied, "**The snake tricked me.**"

Then God asked, "Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then God asked who told Adam, that he were naked, and if he had eaten the fruit that God told him not to eat." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Who told you that you were naked?

Or, "How did you find out that you were naked?" God already knows the answer to all of his questions. By asking this question and the following question, he was giving Adam the opportunity to admit his sin of disobedience. Being naked was not a sin. God created them that way. Their knowledge of their nakedness was the problem. Their shame showed that they had sinned. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?

This is a rhetorical question. God already knew that Adam had eaten the fruit that God had told him not to eat. This can be translated as: a statement: "You ate the fruit that I told you not to eat!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

she gave me the fruit

The man blamed the woman rather than confessing his disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.

Then God asked the woman, "What have you done?"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then God asked the woman what she had done." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

What have you done?

Or, "Why have you done this?" God already knew the answer to this question. By asking this question, he was giving the woman the opportunity to admit her guilt. He was also implying that she should not have done what she did. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The snake tricked me

The snake deceived or misled her. He lied to her. Don't use a word that indicates that he cast a spell on her or bewitched her. The woman blamed the snake rather than confessing her disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

02:09

God said to the snake, "**You are cursed!** You will slide on your belly and eat soil. You and the woman **will hate each other**, and your children and her children will hate each other too. **The woman's descendant will crush your head**, and you **will wound his heel.**"

You are cursed!

This could also be translated as: "I curse you!" or "Great harm will come to you." Do not use a word that implies magic.

will hate each other

The woman would hate the snake and the snake would hate the woman. The women's descendants would also hate the snake's descendants, and the snake's descendants would hate them.

The woman's descendant

Refers to one of her descendants in particular.

will crush your head

The descendant of the woman will destroy the descendant of the snake.

will wound his heel

The descendant of the snake will wound the descendant of the woman.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
 - [descend, descendant](#)
-

02:10

God then said to the woman, "I will make **childbirth very painful** for you. You will desire your husband, and he will rule over you."

childbirth very painful

Some languages may need to express this as a verb. You could say: 'I will cause you to have much more pain when you give birth to children.'

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

02:11

God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and disobeyed me. Now **the ground is cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food. Then **you will die**, and your body **will return to soil**." The man named his wife **Eve, which means "life-giver,"** because she would become **the mother of all people**. And God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins.

the ground is cursed

As punishment for Adam's disobedience, the earth would no longer be fruitful. Adam would have to work very hard to raise enough food to eat.

you will die

The ultimate punishment for their disobedience was death. Spiritual death is our separation from God. Physical death is our separation from our body.

will return to soil

God created Adam from the soil and gave him life. As a result of sin, his life will be taken from him and his body will decompose and become soil again.

Eve, which means “life-giver,”

God gave life to Adam and Eve, and it is passed on to every person through childbirth.

the mother of all people

This means that she would be the female ancestor of all people. Some languages might say ‘she would be the grandmother of all people.’

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious](#)
 - [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [Eve](#)
 - [Adam](#)
-

02:12

Then God said, “Now that the human beings have become **like us by knowing good and evil, they must not be allowed** to eat **the fruit of the tree of life** and live forever.” So God sent Adam and Eve away from the garden. God placed powerful angels at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.

like us by knowing good and evil

Here, this phrase points to a new way that Adam and Eve would be like God. Because they had sinned, they were aware of evil and could experience it. You could say: “because now they knew both good and evil.”

like us

The Bible teaches that there is one God, but the Old Testament word ‘God’ is a plural form, and God uses plural pronouns when speaking to himself. Some understand this as a special way of speaking that expresses God’s majesty, and others understand this as God the Father speaking to the Son and the Spirit, who are all God. (See: [Pronouns](#))

good and evil

This is a merism. **Good** and **evil** are two extremes that represent everything in between them. God is saying that they would understand everything about what is right and wrong. (See: [Merism](#))

they must not be allowed

This can be stated in active form: “we must not allow them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the fruit

The specific kind of fruit is not revealed, so it is best to translate this using a general word for fruit.

the tree of life

This was an actual tree with fruit (See: [01:11](#)). If a person ate this fruit, he would live continually and never die.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 3

Translation Words

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- life, live, living, alive
- Adam
- Eve
- angel, archangel

3. The Flood

03:00

The Flood

This title can also be translated as: "About God made a great flood" or "What happened when God made a great flood?"

03:01

After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become **very wicked and violent**. **It became so bad** that **God decided to destroy** the whole world with **a huge flood**.

After a long time

This story happens many generations (hundreds of years) after creation.

very wicked and violent

It may be more natural to say: "had become wicked and did violent things."

It became so bad

It may be clearer to say: "People were behaving in such harmful and evil ways."

God decided to destroy

This does not mean that the earth would be destroyed completely. Rather God planned to destroy all the people who had rebelled against him and who had caused such evil and violence. This flood would also kill all the land animals and the birds.

a huge flood

Very deep water that would cover the earth, even in places where the ground was normally dry, and even covering the tops of the highest mountains.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

03:02

But **God was pleased with Noah**. He was a righteous man living among wicked people. God told Noah that he **was going to make a big flood**. Therefore, he told Noah to build a huge boat.

God was pleased with Noah

God was pleased with Noah because he feared and obeyed God. So even though Noah was not sinless, God was gracious to him and made a plan to rescue his family from the devastating flood. Make sure this does not sound like Noah was lucky or that he just happened to escape. Rather, it was God's choice.

was going to make a big flood

God planned to cause deep water to cover the earth by sending a lot of rain. That is, he planned to cause the flood by causing a lot of rain to fall.

a big flood

See how you translated this in [03:01](#).

Translation Words

- [Noah](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
-

03:03

God told Noah to make **the boat** about 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 13.5 meters high. Noah was to build it with wood and to make three levels, many rooms, a roof, and a window. The boat would keep Noah, his family, and every kind of land animal safe during the flood.

the boat

The boat was big enough to carry eight people, two of every kind of animal, and their provisions for almost a year.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Noah](#)
-

03:04

Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them. It took many years to build the boat because it was so big. **Noah warned the people** about the flood that was coming and told them **to turn to God**, but they did not believe him.

Noah warned the people

Noah told everyone that God planned to destroy the world because of sin.

to turn to God

This means that they should stop sinning and start obeying God.

Translation Words

- Noah
 - obey, obedient
 - God
-

03:05

God also commanded Noah and his family to gather enough food for themselves and the animals. When everything was ready, God told Noah it was time for him, his wife, his three sons, and their wives to get into the boat—eight people in all.

03:06

God sent a male and a female of every kind of animal and bird to Noah so they could go into the boat and be kept safe during the flood. God sent seven males and seven females of every kind of animal that could be **used for sacrifices**. When they were all in the boat, **God himself closed the door**.

God sent

Noah did not need to find the animals. God sent them to him.

used for sacrifices

For some languages, it may be better to say something like, ‘animals that were acceptable to sacrifice to God.’ God had decided that people should sacrifice animals to him, but he only permitted them to sacrifice certain kinds of animals.

God himself closed the door

This emphasizes that it was God who shut the door.

Translation Words

- God
 - Noah
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
-

03:07

Then it began to **rain, and rain, and rain**. It rained for 40 days and 40 nights without stopping! Water also came **gushing up** out of the earth. Everything in **the whole world was covered** with water, even the highest mountains.

rain, and rain, and rain

This emphasizes that there was an unusual, extreme amount of rain. Other languages may have a different way of emphasizing this.

gushing up

This indicates that there was a large amount of water coming out.

the whole world was covered

This refers to all the earth being covered with water from the flood.

03:08

Everything that lived on the dry land died except the people and animals that were in the boat. The boat floated on the water and kept everything inside the boat safe from drowning.

03:09

After **the rains stopped**, the boat floated on the water for five months, and during this time the water started going down. Then, one day, **the boat rested** on the top of a mountain, but the world was still covered with water. **After three more months**, the tops of the mountains **were visible**.

the rains stopped

This could be translated as: "it stopped raining."

the boat rested

There was so much water from the rain that it covered the mountains. The ship floated over the mountains, and when the water started to go down, the ship went down with the water and settled on a mountain.

After three more months

During the next three months, the water continued to go down.

were visible

Other ways to translate this would be "were showing" or "appeared" or "could be seen." It may be more clear to say: "After three months, the water had gone down enough so that Noah and his family could clearly see the tops of the mountains."

03:10

After 40 more days, Noah sent out a bird called **a raven** to see if the water had dried up. The raven flew back and forth looking for dry land, but it could not find any.

a raven

A black bird that flies and eats a variety of plant and animal foods, including the rotting flesh of dead animals.

Translation Words

- Noah
-

03:11

Later Noah sent out a bird called **a dove**. But it also could not find any dry land, so it came back to Noah. A week later he sent the dove out again, and it came back with **an olive branch** in its beak! **The water was going down**, and the plants were growing again!

a dove

A small white or gray flying bird that eats seeds or fruit.

an olive branch

An olive tree's fruit contains oil which people use for cooking or putting on their skin. If your language does not have a word for **olive branch**, you could translate it as: "branch from a tree called 'olive'" or "branch from an oil-tree."

The water was going down

It may be more natural in your language to say: "the water was going away" or "the level of the water was getting lower."

Translation Words

- Noah
-

03:12

Noah **waited another week** and sent out the dove a third time. This time, it found a place to rest and did not come back. The water was drying up!

waited another week

You could say: "waited seven more days." The word **waited** shows that Noah was allowing time for the floodwaters to go down before sending out the dove again.

Translation Words

- [Noah](#)
-

03:13

Two months later, God said to Noah, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So Noah and his family **came out** of the boat.

Two months later

This means two months after Noah released the dove from the ark. It may be necessary to say this explicitly if it is not clear.

God said to Noah, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Noah that he and his family and all the animals could leave the boat then, and have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Have many children

To make sure it is clear that this was God’s command and desire, you could say: “You must have many children” or “I want you to have many children.”

fill the earth

If this is not clear, it may be necessary to say: “and fill the earth with people” or “so that there will be many people living on the earth.”

came out

Some languages would say: “went out” instead. (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Noah](#)
-

03:14

After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of **animal that could be used for a sacrifice. God was happy** with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.

animal that could be used for a sacrifice

Another way to say this would be: "that people could use to sacrifice to him."

God was happy

God was pleased with Noah for sacrificing these animals.

Translation Words

- Noah
 - altar
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - bless, blessed, blessing
-

03:15

God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."

God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God promised to never again curse the ground because of the evil things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

never again

This means 'not ever again' or 'not again at any time' or 'truly not again.' Examples: 'I will not ever again curse the ground' or 'I will not curse the ground again at any time' or 'I will truly not curse the ground again.'

curse the ground

The earth and the other creatures suffered because of man's sin.

the world

This refers to the earth and the living creatures that lived on it.

people are sinful from the time they are children

Another way to say this would be: "people do sinful things their entire lives."

Translation Words

- God
- promise, promised
- curse, cursed, cursing
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

03:16

God then made the first **rainbow** as **a sign of his promise**. **Every time** the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember **what he promised** and so would his people.

rainbow

This is the multicolored arc of light that often appears in the sky after a rainstorm.

a sign

A sign is something (such as an object or event) that gives a certain meaning or which points to something that is true or will happen.

of his promise

In some languages, it may be better to say: "to show that he had promised."

Every time

Make sure it is clear that this means every time a rainbow appeared from that time on. It may be necessary to add: "From then on, every time..."

what he promised

This refers back to the previous frame in which God promised to never again destroy the earth with a flood.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 6-8

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [promise, promised](#)

4. God's Covenant with Abraham

04:00

God's Covenant with Abraham

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made a covenant with Abraham" or "Why did God make a covenant with Abraham?"

04:01

Many years after the flood, there were again many people in the world, and they still sinned against God and each other. Because they all spoke **the same language**, they gathered together and built **a city** instead of spreading out over the earth as God had commanded.

Many years after the flood

Many generations had passed since the end of the flood.

there were again many people

Noah's family multiplied into enough people to fill a city.

the same language

This means there was only one language, so they could all understand each other.

a city

It is best to use a general word for **city** since the text does not give a specific name.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

04:02

They were very proud, and they did not want to obey God's commands about how they should live. They even began building **a tall tower that would reach heaven**. God saw that, if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.

a tall tower that would reach heaven

This structure was so tall that its top would be in the sky.

heaven

This could be translated as: "sky."

Translation Words

- proud, pride, prideful
 - God
 - heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

04:03

So God **changed their language** into **many different languages** and **spread the people** out all over the world. The city they had begun to build was called **Babel**, which means “**confused**.”

changed their language

In an instant, God miraculously gave them different languages to speak so that, suddenly, they were no longer able to understand each other.

many different languages

Instead of one large group of people speaking one language, there were now many smaller people groups each speaking its own separate language.

spread the people

When God changed their languages, he caused these groups of people to scatter out on the earth. Each group moved to its own area.

Babel

We don't know the exact location of this city, other than it was somewhere in the ancient Middle East.

confused

This refers to how the people were confused or mixed-up when they could no longer understand each other after God changed their language.

Translation Words

- God
-

04:04

Hundreds of years later, God spoke to a man named Abram. **God told him, “Leave your country and family and go to the land I will show you. I will bless you and make you a great nation. I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”**

Hundreds of years later

This could be translated as: “many generations after the people split into different language groups at Babel.” or “a long time after that happened.”

God told him, “Leave your country and family and go to the land I will show you. I will bless you and make you a great nation. I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told him to leave his country and family and go to the land he would show him. God would bless him and make him a great nation. He would make his name great. He would bless those who curse Abram and curse those who curse him. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Leave your country

This refers to the area where Abram was born and grew up (a region in Central Asia called ‘Ur’). It could be translated as: “native region” or “homeland” or something similar.

and family

God was calling Abram to leave behind most of his relatives. However, God was not telling Abram to abandon the people he was responsible for, including his wife.

make you a great nation

Here **great nation** is a metonym that means God would cause Abram to have many descendants, and they would become a large and important nation or country. (See: [Metonymy](#))

will make your name great

This means that Abram’s name and family would become well-known throughout the world and people would think well of them.

All families on earth will be blessed because of you

This can be stated in active form: “I will bless all families on earth because of you.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All families on earth

Abram’s decision to follow God would affect not only his own family, but also families from every people group on earth.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Abraham, Abram](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
 - [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
-

04:05

So Abram obeyed God. **He took** his wife, Sarai, together with all of his servants and everything he owned and went to the land **God showed him, the land of Canaan.**

He took

Some languages would say: "He brought" here. Others would use two different verbs here, such as: "He caused his wife to come with him" or "He brought along all of their servants and possessions."

God showed him

Somehow God made it clear to Abram where he was to go. The text doesn't tell how God showed him.

the land of Canaan

The name of this land was 'Canaan.' This could be translated as: "the land called Canaan."

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - obey, obedient
 - God
 - Sarah, Sarai
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Canaan, Canaanite
-

04:06

When Abram arrived in Canaan, **God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you all this land, and your descendants will always possess it."** Then Abram settled in the land.

God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you all this land, and your descendants will always possess it."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told Abram to look all around, for God would give to him all this land, and his descendants would always possess it." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

all this land

If Abram was standing on a mountain, he could have seen a very large area. On several occasions, God promised to give the entire land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants.

your descendants will always possess it

God promised to give the land to Abram and also to his descendants.

Then Abram settled in the land

Abram lived there along with all those who had gone there with him.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - God
 - descend, descendant
 - inherit, inheritance, heir
-

04:07

There was a man named **Melchizedek** who was a priest of **God Most High**. One day, after Abram had been in a battle, he and Abram met. **Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram."** Then Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything he had won in the battle.

Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Melchizedek blessed Abram and asked that God Most High who owns heaven and earth would bless Abram." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Melchizedek

Melchizedek was the recognized religious authority in Canaan who received and presented offerings to God.

God Most High

The people of Canaan worshiped many false gods. The title **Most High God** explains that the God that Melchizedek worshiped was far superior to all of them, and was the same God that Abram worshiped.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - priest, priesthood
 - God
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
-

04:08

Many years went by, but Abram and Sarai still did not have a son. God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants **as the stars in the sky**. Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.

Many years went by

A large number of years had passed since God had first promised that Abram would have a son.

as the stars in the sky

This expression means that Abram's descendants will be so many that no one can count them all.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - Sarah, Sarai
 - son
 - God
 - promise, promised
 - descend, descendant
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
-

04:09

Then God made a covenant with Abram. Normally, a covenant is an agreement between **two parties** to do things for each other. But **in this case, God made a promise to Abram** while Abram was in a deep sleep, but he could still hear God. **God said, "I will give you a son from your own body. I give the land of Canaan to your descendants."** But Abram still **did not have a son.**

two parties

The parties could be two people, two groups of people, or a person and a group of people.

in this case, God made a promise to Abram

The promise that God made to Abraham was without conditions. God would do what he promised. It did not depend on what Abram did.

God said, "I will give you a son from your own body. I give the land of Canaan to your descendants."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God said he would give Abram a son from his own body, and would give the land of Canaan to his descendants." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

from your own body

With his own body, Abram would cause his wife to become pregnant, so that, together, they would have their own, natural son. This was an amazing promise, since Abram and Sarai were very old.

did not have a son

Abram still did not have any descendants who could possess the land.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 11-15

Translation Words

- God
- covenant
- Abraham, Abram
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- descend, descendant

5. The Son of Promise

05:00

The Son of Promise

This title can also be translated as: "About how God promised Abraham that he would have a son" or "How did God promise to give Abraham a son?"

05:01

Ten years after Abram and Sarai arrived in Canaan, **they still did not have a child. So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children, and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."**

they still did not have a child

Without a child, Abram had no descendants to become a great nation.

So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children, and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him that since God had not allowed her to have children and now I am too old to have children, Abram should take her servant, Hagar, and marry her also so she could have a child for Sarai." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Marry her also

Abram would take Hagar as a second wife, but Hagar would not have the full status of a wife as Sarai did. She was still Sarai's servant.

have a child for me

Since Hagar was Sarai's servant, Sarai would be considered the mother of any children that Hagar bore.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - Sarah, Sarai
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - God
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Hagar
-

05:02

So Abram **married** Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael. But Sarai **became jealous of Hagar**. When Ishmael was thirteen years old, God again spoke to Abram.

married

Hagar became Abram's concubine—a 'second wife' of lower status. Hagar was still Sarai's servant.

became jealous of Hagar

Sarai was jealous of Hagar because Hagar could have children and Sarai could not.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - Hagar
 - Ishmael, Ishmaelite
 - Sarah, Sarai
 - God
-

05:03

God said, "I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you." Then Abram bowed to the ground. **God also told Abram, "You will be the father of many nations. I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession, and I will be their God forever. You must circumcise every male in your family."**

God also told Abram, "You will be the father of many nations. I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession, and I will be their God forever. You must circumcise every male in your family."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God also told Abram that Abram would be the father of many nations. God would give him and his descendants the land of Canaan as their possession and would be their God forever. Abram must circumcise every male in his family." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

the father of many nations

Abram would have many descendants, and they would have their own lands and rule themselves. They and others would remember that Abram was their ancestor and would honor him.

I will be their God

Another way to say this is: "I will be the God that they will worship."

every male in your family

This could be translated as: "every boy and man in your family." This included Abram's servants and his descendants.

Translation Words

- God
 - covenant
 - Abraham, Abram
 - descend, descendant
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
-

05:04

“Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac. I will make my covenant with him, and he will become a great nation. I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.” Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means **“father of many.”** God also changed Sarai’s name to Sarah, which means **“princess.”**

General Information

God continues to speak to Abram.

“Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac. I will make my covenant with him, and he will become a great nation. I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “His wife, Sarai, would have a son—he will be the son of promise. He would name him Isaac. God would make is covenant with Isaac, and he will become a great nation. God would make Ishmael a great nation, too, but his covenant would be with Isaac.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

the son of promise

Isaac would be the son that God promised to Sarai and Abram. He would also be the son that God would use to give Abram many descendants.

I will make my covenant with him

This would be the same covenant that God made with Abram.

father of many

As God had promised, Abraham would become the ancestor of many people who would even become many nations.

princess

A princess is a daughter of a king. The names Sarai and Sarah apparently both meant ‘princess.’ But God changed her name to signify that she would be the mother of many nations, and some of her descendants would be kings.

Translation Words

- Sarah, Sarai

- son
 - promise, promised
 - Isaac
 - covenant
 - Ishmael, Ishmaelite
 - God
 - Abraham, Abram
 - Sarah, Sarai
-

05:05

That day Abraham circumcised **all the males in his household**. About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac, as God had told them to do.

all the males in his household

This means all of the men and boys that Abraham was responsible for, including his male servants, young and old.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
 - Sarah, Sarai
 - son
 - Isaac
 - God
-

05:06

When Isaac was a young man, **God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."** Again, Abraham obeyed God. He **prepared to sacrifice his son**.

God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God tested Abraham's faith by telling him to take Isaac, his only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to God." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

God tested Abraham's faith

God wanted Abraham to show that he was completely submitted to God, that he would obey whatever God told him to do.

your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "your only son whom I have promised" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

kill him

God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.

prepared to sacrifice his son

Abraham got ready to sacrifice his son. God stopped him before he killed his son.

Translation Words

- Isaac
 - God
 - Abraham, Abram
 - faith
 - son
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - obey, obedient
-

05:07

As Abraham and Isaac **walked to the place of sacrifice**, Isaac asked, **“Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?”** Abraham replied, **“God will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son.”**

walked to the place of sacrifice

God had told Abraham to sacrifice Isaac on a special high hill that was about three days' walk from where they lived.

Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Isaac told his father that they had wood for the sacrifice, but he did not know where the lamb was.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

wood for the sacrifice

For a sacrifice, normally the lamb was killed and then placed on top of wood so that the wood and the lamb could be burned up with fire.

the lamb

A young sheep or goat would be the normal animal for a sacrifice.

Abraham replied, “God will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Abraham replied to his son that God would provide the lamb for the sacrifice.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

will provide the lamb

Abraham may have believed that Isaac was the lamb that God provided, although God fulfilled Abraham's words by providing a ram to sacrifice in Isaac's place.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - Isaac
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - God
-

05:08

When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about **to kill his son** when **God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."**

to kill his son

God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.

God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told him to stop, and not to hurt the boy! God now knew that Abraham feared God because he did not keep his only son from him." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

you fear me

Abraham feared God, which included respect and reverence for God. Because of those things, he obeyed God.

your only son

Ishmael was also Abraham's son, but Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God's covenant was with Isaac and it was through Isaac that God would fulfill his promise. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "your only son whom I have promised" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - Abraham, Abram
 - son
 - Isaac
 - altar
 - God
-

05:09

Nearby, Abraham saw **a ram** that was stuck in a bush. **God had provided the ram** to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac. Abraham happily offered the ram as a sacrifice.

a ram

A ram is an adult male sheep.

God had provided the ram

Just at the right moment, God caused the ram to be stuck in the bush.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - God
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - Isaac
-

05:10

Then God said to Abraham, “Because you were willing to give me everything, even your only son, I promise to bless you. Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have obeyed me, I will bless all the families of the world through your family.”

Then God said to Abraham, “Because you were willing to give me everything, even your only son, I promise to bless you. Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have obeyed me, I will bless all the families of the world through your family.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God said to Abraham that because Abraham was willing to give God everything, even his only son, he promised to bless him. His descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because Abraham had obeyed him, God would bless all the families of the world through Abraham’s family.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

your only son

See explanation in [05:08](#).

the stars in the sky

See explanation in [04:08](#).

all the families of the world

Here, **families** refers to the larger distinct groups of people on earth, rather than to each set of parents and children.

your family

Here, **family** refers to the many descendants that Abraham would have. The future generations of the world would be blessed through Abraham's descendants. The greatest blessing would come many generations later through God's chosen servant, the Messiah.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 16-22

Translation Words

- God
- Abraham, Abram
- son
- promise, promised
- bless, blessed, blessing
- descend, descendant
- obey, obedient

6. God Provides for Isaac

06:00

God Provides for Isaac

This title can also be translated as: "About how God got a wife for Isaac" or "How did God get a wife for Isaac?"

06:01

When Abraham was very old, his son Isaac had grown to be a man. So Abraham **sent one of his servants back to the land** where his relatives lived **to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac.**

sent one of his servants back

This could be translated as: "told one of his servants to go back." The word **back** means that the servant would be going to the same place where Abraham used to live long ago before he came to Canaan. Make sure the translation of this phrase makes that clear.

to the land

This land was east of where Abraham was now living.

to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac

This could be translated as: "to bring back an unmarried woman for his son, Isaac, to marry."

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
 - son
 - Isaac
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

06:02

After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to Rebekah. She was **the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.**

the granddaughter of Abraham's brother

Specifically, she was the daughter of Abraham's brother's son. Her grandfather was Abraham's brother.

Translation Words

- Abraham, Abram
- God
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

- [Rebekah](#)
-

06:03

Rebekah agreed to leave her family and go back with the servant to Isaac's home. Isaac married her as soon as she arrived.

Rebekah agreed

Even though Rebekah's parents were arranging her marriage, they did not force her to go marry Isaac.

Translation Words

- [Rebekah](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
-

06:04

After a long time, Abraham died. **God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac because of the covenant he had made with Abraham.** One of God's promises in that covenant was that Abraham would have **countless** descendants. But Isaac's wife, Rebekah, could not have children.

God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac because of the covenant he had made with Abraham.

The promises of the covenant that God made with Abraham were not for him only, but also for his descendants.

countless

This could also be translated as: "very many." The word **countless** means there would be so many descendants that people would not be able to count them.

Translation Words

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [covenant](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
 - [descend, descendant](#)
 - [Rebekah](#)
-

06:05

Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. The two babies struggled with each other while they were still **in Rebekah's womb**, so Rebekah asked God what was happening.

in Rebekah's womb

This could mean 'inside her.'

Translation Words

- Isaac
 - Rebekah
 - God
-

06:06

God told Rebekah, "You will give birth to two sons. Their descendants will become two different nations. They will struggle with each other. But the nation coming from your older son will have to obey the nation coming from your younger son."

God told Rebekah, "You will give birth to two sons. Their descendants will become two different nations. They will struggle with each other. But the nation coming from your older son will have to obey the nation coming from your younger son."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told Rebekah that she would give birth to two sons. Their descendants would become two different nations. They would struggle with each other. But the nation coming from her older son would have to obey the nation coming from her younger son." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

They will struggle with each other

Both the two sons and the nations that will come from them will continually fight with each other. Compare to [06:05](#).

your older son

Even though the babies were twins, the baby that came out first would be treated as the older son.

Translation Words

- God
 - Rebekah
 - son
-

06:07

When **Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red** and **hairy**, and they named him Esau. Then **the younger son came out** holding on to Esau's heel, and they named him Jacob.

Rebekah's babies were born

Some languages have a more indirect way of saying this such as: "when Rebekah saw and took them" or "when Rebekah brought them to light."

the older son came out...the younger son came out

This could be translated as: "the first son to come out was...the second son to come out was." Make sure that the way **older** and **younger** are translated still communicates that the boys were twins.

red

This may mean that his skin was very red or that the hair on his body was red.

hairy

Esau had a lot of hair on his body. You could say: "the older son's body was red, with lots of hair."

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 24:1-25:26

Translation Words

- [Rebekah](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

7. God Blesses Jacob

07:00

God Blesses Jacob

This title can also be translated as: "About how God helped Jacob" or "What did God do to help Jacob?"

07:01

As the boys grew up, Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt animals. Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.

As the boys grew up, Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt animals

This is background information telling how the boys were different from each other, and that their parents each favored one child over the other. (See: [Background Information](#))

loved to stay at home...loved to hunt

Some languages will use a word for **love** here that is different from the one used for, "Rebekah loved Jacob." For example, this could be translated as: "liked to stay at home...liked to hunt" or "preferred to stay at home...preferred to hunt."

at home

This expression refers to the area around the family dwellings. Jacob preferred to stay close to the tents where they lived. Some languages have a special expression for **at home**.

but Esau loved to hunt animals

The connecting word **but** contrasts Esau's love of hunting with Jacob's love of staying home. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau

This could be translated as: "Rebekah was more fond of Jacob, and Isaac was more fond of Esau." This does not necessarily mean that Rebekah and Isaac did not love the other son, but that each parent had a favorite.

but Isaac loved Esau

The connecting word **but** contrasts Isaac's love of Esau with Rebekah's love of Jacob. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [Isaac](#)

07:02

One day when Esau came back from hunting, he was very hungry. **Esau said to Jacob, “Give me some of the food you have made.” Jacob responded, “First, promise me that everything you should receive because you were born first, you will give it all to me.”** So Esau promised to give to Jacob all those things. Then Jacob gave him some food.

Esau said to Jacob, “Give me some of the food you have made.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Esau asked Jacob to give him some of the food that Jacob had made.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Give me some of the food...you will give it all

Some languages may prefer to use two different words for **give** here. This would also apply to, “Esau promised to give...Jacob gave” in the last two sentences.

Jacob responded, “First, promise me that everything you should receive because you were born first, you will give it all to me.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jacob told Esau to first promise that everything Esau would receive because he was born first, he would give it all to Jacob.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

everything you should receive because you were born first

According to their custom, since Esau was the oldest son, he should have been the one to receive twice as much of their father’s wealth when their father died. Jacob thought of a way to take these rights of the oldest son from Esau.

Translation Words

- [Esau](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

07:03

Isaac wanted to **give his blessing** to Esau. **But before he did**, Rebekah and Jacob **tricked him** by having Jacob **pretend** to be Esau. Isaac was old and could no longer see. **So Jacob put on Esau’s clothes and put goatskins on his neck and hands.**

give his blessing

It was customary for fathers to formally express their desire for good things to happen to their children. Normally, the older son received the best promise. Isaac wanted this extra prosperity to happen to Esau.

But before he did

The connecting word **But** here contrasts Isaac’s desire to give Esau a blessing with the Rebekah and Jacob’s trick that intervened, preventing him from doing so. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

tricked him

The word **trick** means to do something to deliberately deceive someone. Rebekah came up with a plan to deceive Isaac into giving Jacob the special blessing instead of Esau.

pretend

The word **pretend** shows how Jacob would deceive his father (who had very poor eyesight in his old age).

So Jacob put on Esau's clothes and put goatskins on his neck and hands.

The connecting word **So** here connects the result, Jacob put on Esau's clothes and goatskin to deceive Isaac, with the reason, Isaac was old and blind. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Esau's clothes

This refers to the clothes that Esau owned. (See: [Possession](#))

goatskins

The hairiness of the goatskins would make Jacob feel like Esau.

Translation Words

- [Isaac](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
 - [Esau](#)
 - [Rebekah](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

07:04

Jacob came to Isaac and said, "I am Esau. I have come so that you can bless me." **When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was Esau and blessed him.**

Jacob came to Isaac

In some languages, it might be more natural to say: "Jacob went to Isaac."

When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was Esau and blessed him.

This is a sequential clause. The word **When** connects Isaac feeling and smelling Jacob with the resulting action (he believed it was Esau and blessed him). (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

he thought it was Esau

He thought that the person he was touching and smelling was Esau.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Esau](#)

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
-

07:05

Esau hated Jacob **because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing. So he planned to kill Jacob** after their father died.

because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing

The connecting word **because** connects the reason, Jacob stole Esau's rights and blessing, with the result, Esau hated Jacob. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

his rights

This refers to the the extra blessing and inheritance that belonged to Esau because he was the firstborn son. (See: [Possession](#))

rights as oldest son

Jacob found a way to get the larger portion of their father's wealth that should have gone to Esau as the older son. See also note on [07:02](#).

his blessing

Jacob also tricked their father into giving him the promise of extra prosperity that Isaac intended to give to Esau. See also note on [07:03](#).

So he planned to kill Jacob

The connecting word **So** connects the result, Esau planned to kill Jacob, with the reason, Esau hated Jacob. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Esau](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
-

07:06

But Rebekah heard of Esau's plan. So she and Isaac sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

But Rebekah heard of Esau's plan

The connecting word **But** is used in a contrast relationship. It contrasts Esau's plan to kill Jacob with Rebekah hearing of it and devising a different plan. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Esau's plan

This refers to the plan that Esau had decided to do. (See: [Possession](#))

Esau's plan was to kill Jacob after his father died.

So she and Isaac sent Jacob far away

The connecting word **So** connects the result, Rebekah and Isaac sent Jacob far away, with the reason, Rebekah heard of Esau's plan to kill Jacob. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

she and Isaac sent Jacob far away

Rebekah wanted to protect Jacob from Esau, so she talked to Isaac about sending Jacob away.

far away to live with her relatives

This was the same place where Rebekah was living when Abraham's servant asked her to be Isaac's wife. To make this clear, you could add: "in the same land where she used to live." The land was to the east, several hundred miles away.

her relatives

This could also be translated as: "their relatives." Since Abraham's brother was Rebekah's grandfather, her relatives were also Isaac's relatives.

Translation Words

- [Rebekah](#)
 - [Esau](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

07:07

Jacob lived with **Rebekah's relatives** for many years. **During that time he married and had 12 sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.**

Rebekah's relatives

This refers to a social relationship—these people were related to Rebekah as part of her extended family. (See: [Possession](#))

During that time he married and had 12 sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.

This is background information about what happened while Jacob was away. (See: [Background Information](#))

very wealthy

This included money, large herds of animals and other possessions.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
 - [Rebekah](#)
 - [God](#)
-

07:08

After 20 years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with **his family**, his servants, and **all his flocks and herds of animals**.

After 20 years

Jacob had lived for twenty years in the land where his mother was from. If that is not clear you could say: "After twenty years living in the land where his relatives were..." (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

his family

This refers to a social relationship—the people who were his family, those related to him by birth or marriage. (See: [Possession](#))

all his flocks and herds of animals

This refers to ownership—all the groups of animals that belonged to him. (See: [Possession](#))

herds

A **herd** is a large group of animals. Use a similar word in your language. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
-

07:09

Jacob was very afraid because he thought Esau still wanted to kill him. So he sent many of his animals to Esau as a gift. The servants who brought the animals said to Esau, "**Your servant, Jacob**, is giving you these animals. He is coming soon."

Your servant, Jacob

Jacob was not actually Esau's servant. But Jacob told his servants to say this because he wanted to show Esau that he was coming to him humbly and respectfully, so that Esau would no longer be angry with him.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

- Esau
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

07:10

But Esau no longer wanted to harm Jacob. Instead, he was very happy to see him again, so the brothers lived peacefully in Canaan. Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had made to Abraham now passed on from Isaac to Jacob.

But Esau no longer wanted to harm Jacob

The connecting word **But** here contrasts Jacob's fear of Esau wanting to kill him with Esau no longer wanting to harm Jacob. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Instead, he was very happy to see him again

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts Jacob's fear of Esau wanting to kill him with Esau being happy to see Jacob. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

lived peacefully

This refers to the fact that Esau and Jacob were not angry at each other and did not fight with each other.

Then Isaac died

The connecting word **Then** connects the timing of events. Jacob's return to Canaan and living there were followed by Isaac's death and Jacob and Esau burying him together. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

buried him

This could mean that they dug a hole in the ground, placed Isaac's body in it, and covered the hole with dirt or stones. Or it could mean that they placed Isaac's body in a cave and covered the opening.

The covenant promises

These were the promises that God made in his covenant with Abraham.

passed on from Isaac to Jacob

The promises went from Abraham to his son Isaac, and now to Isaac's son Jacob. Esau did not receive the promises (See: [06:04](#)).

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 25:27-35:29

Translation Words

- Esau
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Isaac
- covenant
- promise, promised
- God
- Abraham, Abram

8. God Saves Joseph and His Family

08:00

God Saves Joseph and His Family

This title can also be translated as: "About how God took care of Joseph and his family" or "How did God rescue Joseph and his family?"

08:01

Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the flocks.

Many years later, when Jacob was an old man

This begins a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

sent

This word means that Jacob told Joseph to go and Joseph went.

his favorite son

This phrase refers to a social relationship—the favorite son who was born to him. This could be translated as: "the son he loved more than any of his other children." (See: [Possession](#))

check on

This means that Joseph is to go and see if everything is all right with his brothers. Some languages might say something like: "to see about his brothers' well-being."

his brothers

These were Joseph's older brothers.

were taking care of the flocks

Since this was several days' journey away, it may be necessary to say: "who were far away taking care of..."

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
 - [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
-

08:02

Joseph's brothers hated him **because their father loved him most, and because Joseph had dreamed** that he would be their ruler. **When Joseph came to his brothers**, they **took him captive** and sold him to some **slave traders**.

because their father loved him most, and because Joseph had dreamed

The word **because** connects the two reasons Joseph's brothers hated him (their father loved him most and Joseph's dream), with the result (they hated him). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

When Joseph came

The word **When** indicates the order of events. After Joseph came the brothers took him captive and sold him. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

came to his brothers

Another way this could be translated is: "reached the place where his brothers were."

took him captive

They took him against his will. It was not right for them to do this.

slave traders

These were people who made a business of buying people from one owner and selling them as slaves to another owner.

Translation Words

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
 - [dream](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
-

08:03

Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in **goat's blood**. Then they showed the robe to their father **so he would think that a wild animal** had killed Joseph. Jacob was very sad.

Before Joseph's brothers returned home

The connecting word **Before** indicates the order of events. Joseph's brothers tore his robe and dipped it in blood. Then they returned home. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

goat's blood

This connects the blood with the goat, of which it was a part. The brothers wanted Jacob to think that the blood on the clothes was Joseph's blood. (See: [Possession](#))

so he would think that a wild animal

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (showing Jacob the torn robe dipped in blood), with the desired result (Jacob thinking a wild animal killed Joseph). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

08:04

The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. **Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.** The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to **a wealthy government official.** **Joseph served his master well, and God blessed Joseph.**

Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.

This is background information about the country of Egypt where the slave traders took Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

a wealthy government official

This was a person who was part of the Egyptian government. Another way to say this would be: “a leader in Egypt’s government.”

Joseph served his master well, and God blessed Joseph.

The connecting word **and** indicates two events that happened when Joseph became a slave. There is no indication of cause and effect. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
-

08:05

His master’s wife **tried to sleep with Joseph, but Joseph refused to sin against God** in this way. She became angry and falsely accused Joseph so that he was arrested and sent to prison. **Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God,** and God blessed him.

tried to sleep with Joseph

Another way to say this would be: “tried to seduce Joseph to have sex with her.” To **sleep with** is a way of expressing this in order not to be crude or offensive. (See: [Euphemism](#))

but Joseph refused to sin against God

The connecting word **but** indicates a contrast. You would expect that when Joseph’s master’s wife tried to sleep with him, Joseph would agree, but instead he did the unexpected and refused. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

sin against God

It is against God’s law for people to have sex together if they are not married to each other. Joseph did not want to sin by disobeying God’s law.

Even in prison

The connecting word **Even** indicates a contrast. You would expect Joseph to become bitter in prison but, instead, he continued to be faithful and God continued to bless him. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

remained faithful to God

Another way to say this would be: “continued to obey God.”

Translation Words

- Joseph (OT)
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
 - faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - bless, blessed, blessing
-

08:06

After two years, Joseph was still in prison even though he was innocent. One night the Pharaoh, **which is what the Egyptians called their kings**, had two dreams that **disturbed him greatly**. **None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the dreams.**

which is what the Egyptians called their kings

This is background information about the title, ‘Pharaoh.’ (See: [Background Information](#))

disturbed him greatly

This means that the king felt very afraid and confused (because of what he had seen in the dreams).

None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the dreams.

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. This can be clearly stated: “God did not enable any of his advisors to tell him the meaning of the dreams..” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his advisors

These were men with special powers and knowledge who could sometimes tell what dreams meant. Some translations refer to them as 'wise men.'

the meaning of the dreams

People in Egypt believed that dreams were messages from the gods telling them about what would happen in the future. God used Pharaoh's dreams to tell him what would happen.

Translation Words

- Joseph (OT)
 - innocent
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - dream
-

08:07

God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh **had Joseph brought to him** from the prison. Joseph interpreted the dreams for him **and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."**

God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams

Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. This can be clearly stated: "God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams in order to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to interpret dreams

To **interpret** is to tell what something means. So Joseph was able to tell people what their dreams meant.

had Joseph brought to him

Another way to say this would be: "ordered his servants to bring Joseph to him."

and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "and told him that God was going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

God is going to send

God will cause the crops to grow well for seven years, and after that he will cause them to produce very little food so that the people and animals will not have enough to eat.

famine

The gardens and fields would produce so little food that people and animals would not have enough to eat.

Translation Words

- God
 - Joseph (OT)
 - dream
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
-

08:08

Pharaoh **was so impressed with Joseph** that **he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!**

was so impressed with Joseph

Pharaoh was amazed by Joseph's wisdom and felt respect for him; he trusted Joseph to make wise decisions that would benefit the people. It may be clearer to say: "impressed with Joseph's wisdom."

he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!

This is a strong statement that emphasizes how unusual it was for a slave to be so honored by the Pharaoh. (See: [Exclamations](#))

the second most powerful man

Pharaoh made Joseph a very powerful and important ruler over all of Egypt. Only Pharaoh was more powerful and important than Joseph.

Translation Words

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - Joseph (OT)
 - Egypt, Egyptian
-

08:09

Joseph told the people **to store up large amounts of food** during the seven years of good harvests. When the seven years of **famine** came, Joseph sold the food to the people so they would have enough to eat.

to store up large amounts of food

From the abundant harvests, they took food to the cities and stored it there. The food then belonged to Pharaoh.

famine

See how you translated this in [08:07](#).

Translation Words

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
-

08:10

The famine was severe not only in **Egypt, but also in Canaan** where Jacob and his family lived.

The famine was severe

The famine was very bad. There was very little food and many people outside of Egypt were starving.

Egypt, but also in Canaan

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to say: “the country of Egypt, but also in the land of Canaan.”

Translation Words

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

08:11

So, Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food. The brothers **did not recognize Joseph** when they stood before him to buy food. **But Joseph recognized them.**

So, Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food.

The connecting word **So** connects the result (Jacob send his sons to buy food), with the reason (the famine was bad in Canaan). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

his older sons

These were Joseph's older brothers who had sold him into slavery.

did not recognize Joseph

They did not know that the man was Joseph, because now Joseph was much older than when they last saw him, and he was dressed as an Egyptian ruler.

But Joseph recognized them.

The connecting word **But** indicates a contrast relationship. It contrasts Joseph's brothers not recognizing him with Joseph recognizing them. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
-

08:12

After testing his brothers to see **if they had changed**, Joseph said to them, **“I am your brother, Joseph! Do not be afraid.** You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but God used the evil for good!** Come and live in Egypt so I can provide for you and your families.”

After testing his brothers

The connecting word **After** begins a sequential clause. Joseph tested his brothers to see if they had changed and then he revealed who he was. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

testing his brothers

Joseph placed his older brothers in a difficult situation to see if they would protect their youngest brother or treat him as badly as they had treated Joseph. When they protected their youngest brother, Joseph knew they had changed.

if they had changed

Another way to say this would be: “if they were different than they used to be.” Years ago Joseph’s brothers sold him into slavery. Joseph wanted to find out if they would now do what was right.

I am your brother, Joseph!

This is a strong statement that Joseph was indeed their brother, even though he knew they would find it very difficult to believe that. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Do not be afraid

Joseph gave this command to his brothers who were afraid because they had greatly wronged Joseph. Now, as a great ruler, he had the power to punish them. Joseph could refuse to sell them food, or could even put them in prison or kill them. Another way to say this would be: “You do not need to fear any punishment from me.”

but God used the evil for good!

The connecting word **but** contrasts Joseph’s brother’s desire to do evil to God’s using it for good. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

God used the evil for good!

This is a strong statement, because it is surprising that God was able to cause good to happen from the evil thing the brothers did to Joseph. (See: [Exclamations](#))

evil for good

Joseph’s brothers did an evil thing when they sold Joseph as a slave and he was taken to Egypt. But God allowed this so that Joseph could save thousands of people, including his own family, from starving during the famine. This was a very good thing.

Translation Words

- Joseph (OT)
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - God
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
 - Egypt, Egyptian
-

08:13

When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.

08:14

Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there. **Before Jacob died**, he blessed each of his sons.

Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt

Egypt was a great distance away from Canaan, and it would have been difficult for an elderly man to walk or ride a cart that far.

Before Jacob died

Jacob died in Egypt. He did not get to return to Canaan, the land God had promised to give to him and his descendants.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - bless, blessed, blessing
-

08:15

The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham **were passed on to** Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's **12** sons and their families. The descendants of the 12 sons became **the 12 tribes of Israel**.

The covenant promises

Long ago God made an agreement with Abraham and promised him that he would give him many descendants; they would possess the land of Canaan and become a great nation. God also promised that all peoples would be blessed through Abraham's line (See: [07:10](#)).

were passed on to

Other ways to say this are: “passed down to” or “given to” or “applied to.” God’s promise to Abraham was also for Abraham’s children, grandchildren and all the rest of his descendants (See: [06:04](#)).

the 12 tribes of Israel

God had promised Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that their descendants would become a great nation. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob’s 12 sons became 12 great tribes. These 12 tribes made up the ancient nation called Israel, which was named by Jacob’s new name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

12

This could also be written in words: “twelve.” (See: [Numbers](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 37-50

Translation Words

- [covenant](#)
- [promise, promised](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [descend, descendant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

9. God Calls Moses

09:00

God Calls Moses

This title can also be translated as: "About how God called Moses to work for him" or "How did God call Moses to work for him?"

09:01

After Joseph died, all of **his relatives** stayed in Egypt. They and their descendants continued to live there for many years and had many children. **They were called the Israelites.**

After Joseph died

This begins a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

his relatives

This refers to a social relationship—all the people who were related to him by birth or marriage. (See: [Possession](#))

They were called the Israelites

The people group that descended from Jacob was called 'Israel,' which is the name that God gave to Jacob. The people from that group were called **Israelites**.

Translation Words

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [descend, descendant](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

09:02

After hundreds of years, the number of **Israelites** had become very large. The **Egyptians** were no longer grateful that Joseph had done so much to help them. They became afraid of the Israelites **because there were so many of them**. So the **Pharaoh who was ruling Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves** to the Egyptians.

After hundreds of years

This begins a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Israelites

'Israelite people' or 'people of Israel' (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Egyptians

'Egyptian people' or 'people of Egypt' (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

because there were so many of them

The connecting word **because** connects the action (the Egyptians being afraid) with the reason (there were so many Israelites). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Pharaoh

Pharaoh is an Egyptian word that refers to their king. This Pharaoh was probably the son of a former Pharaoh who had died, who may have been a descendant of the Pharaoh that Joseph knew.

who was ruling Egypt at that time

This is background information about the ruler who was Pharaoh at that time. (See: [Background Information](#))

made the Israelites slaves

This could mean 'forced the Israelites to do hard labor against their will and treated them very harshly.'

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
-

09:03

The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities. The hard work **made their lives miserable**, but **God blessed them**, and they had even more children.

made their lives miserable

This means that they suffered terribly because of how harshly they were treated and how hard they were forced to work. They also felt very discouraged.

God blessed them

God took care of them, helping them endure the severe treatment and even caused them to become more numerous by giving them many children.

Translation Words

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
-

09:04

Pharaoh **saw** that the Israelites were having many babies, **so he ordered his people to kill** all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the Nile River.

saw

Other ways to say this are: “realized” or “knew.”

so he ordered his people to kill

The connecting word **so** connects the result (Pharaoh ordered the people to kill all the Israelite boys), with the reason. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
-

09:05

A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy. She hid the baby for **as long as she could**.

as long as she could

She hid the baby from the Egyptians until it became too difficult to keep him safely hidden in her home.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
-

09:06

When the boy’s mother could no longer hide him, she put him in a floating basket among the **reeds** along the edge of the Nile River in order to save him from being killed. His older sister watched to see what would happen to him.

reeds

A **reed** is a type of tall grass that grew in flat, wet areas. Use a similar word in your language. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
-

09:07

A daughter of Pharaoh saw the basket and looked inside. When she saw the baby, she **took him as her own son**. She hired an Israelite woman **to nurse him** without realizing the woman was the baby's own mother. When the child was old enough that he no longer needed his mother's milk, his mother returned him to Pharaoh's daughter, who named him Moses.

took him as her own son

She was a princess. When she made him her son, he became a prince of Egypt.

to nurse him

Another way to say this would be: "to breastfeed him."

Translation Words

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - son
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Moses
-

09:08

One day, when Moses **had grown up**, he saw an Egyptian beating an Israelite slave. Moses tried to save **his fellow Israelite**.

had grown up

Another way to say this would be: "had grown into a man."

his fellow Israelite

This phrase refers to the Israelite slave. The word **fellow** here indicates that Moses was also an Israelite. Although the daughter of the Egyptian Pharaoh raised Moses, Moses remembered that he was really an Israelite.

Translation Words

- Moses
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Israel, Israelites
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
-

09:09

When Moses thought nobody would see, he killed the Egyptian and buried his body. But someone saw what Moses had done.

09:10

Pharaoh learned what Moses had done. He tried to kill him, **but Moses fled from Egypt** into **the wilderness**. Pharaoh's soldiers could not find him there.

but Moses fled from Egypt

The connecting word **But** contrasts Pharaoh trying to kill Moses with Moses escaping into the wilderness. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

the wilderness

The wilderness was a large area that was rocky and dry. The land there was not good for growing food and few people lived there.

Translation Words

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

09:11

Moses became a shepherd in **the wilderness** far away from Egypt. He married a woman from that place and had two sons.

the wilderness

See how you translated this in [09:10](#).

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [shepherd, chief shepherd](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

09:12

Moses was **taking care of his father-in-law's flock of sheep**. One day he saw **a bush on fire, burning without being destroyed**. He went close to the bush to look at it. When he was very

close, **God spoke to him and said, “Moses, take off your shoes. You are standing on holy ground.”**

taking care of his father-in-law’s flock of sheep

This means he was doing the work of a shepherd to guide the sheep to grass and water, and to protect them. It could be translated as: “tending the sheep that belonged to his father-in-law.”

flock of sheep

A **flock of sheep** is a large group of sheep that are owned by someone. Use a similar word in your language. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

a bush on fire, burning without being destroyed

God made the bush full of fire, but the fire did not damage the bush.

God spoke to him

This could be translated as: “God said out loud.” Moses heard God speak, but he did not see God.

God spoke to him and said, “Moses, take off your shoes. You are standing on holy ground.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Moses to take off his shoes, because he was standing on holy ground.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

take off your shoes

God wanted him to take off his shoes to show that he greatly respected God. To make clear the reason for this, you could say: “take off your shoes, because you are on holy ground.”

holy ground

It was holy in the sense that God set it apart from the ordinary land and made it to be a special place where He would reveal Himself.

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
-

09:13

Then God said, “I have seen **the suffering of my people**. I will send you to Pharaoh **so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt**. I will give them the land of Canaan, the land I promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

the suffering of my people

This could be translated as: “the very harsh treatment that my people are experiencing.” Some languages might translate this as: “how the Egyptians are giving my people terrible pain.”

my people

This refers to the Israelites. God had made a covenant with Abraham and his descendants that he would bless them and make them into a great nation. Through this covenant, the Israelites became God’s own people.

so that you can bring the Israelites

The connecting words **so that** connect the result (Moses bringing the Israelites out of their slavery), and the reason (God has seen their suffering). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt

This can be translated as: “can set the Israelites free from being slaves in Egypt” or “can bring the Israelites out of Egypt where they are now slaves.”

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [suffer, suffering](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [Abraham, Abram](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

09:14

Moses asked, “What if **the people** want to know who sent me, what should I say?” God said, “**I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.’ This is my name forever.**”

the people

See **my people** in [09:13](#).

I AM WHO I AM

This description shows that God can only be defined by himself, not by anything else that we know of, and he cannot be compared to anyone else.

Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "Tell them that I AM has sent you to them." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

I AM

This name emphasizes that God is the only one who has always lived and always will live. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "Also tell them that I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Yahweh

The name **Yahweh** means 'HE IS' and expresses that God exists by his own power—no one created him. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

my name

The name that God told Moses and all of Israel to use for him is 'Yahweh,' which is related to 'I AM' and appears to mean 'HE IS.'

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Yahweh](#)
 - [Abraham, Abram](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

09:15

Moses **was afraid and did not want to go** to Pharaoh because he thought he could not speak well, **so God sent Moses' brother, Aaron**, to help him.

was afraid and did not want to go

Moses knew that Pharaoh wanted to kill him, and he did not believe that he could do what God wanted him to do.

so God sent Moses' brother

The connecting word **so** connects the result (God sent Aaron to help Moses), and the reason (Moses thought he could not speak well). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Moses' brother, Aaron

Aaron was Moses' actual brother from his Israelite mother and father. Aaron would have been at least several years older than Moses.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 1-4

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [God](#)
- [Aaron](#)

10. The Ten Plagues

10:00

The Ten Plagues

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the Egyptians suffer with the Ten Plagues" or "What happened when God made the Egyptians suffer from the ten plagues?"

10:01

God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be **stubborn**. When they went **to Pharaoh**, they said, "**This is what the God of Israel says, 'Let my people go!'**" **But Pharaoh did not listen to them. Instead of letting the Israelites go free, he forced them to work even harder!**

stubborn

This means the Pharaoh would refuse to obey God. You may also want to add: "stubborn and refuse to listen (or obey)."

to Pharaoh

It may be clearer to say: "to Pharaoh's palace to talk to him."

This is what the God of Israel says, 'Let my people go!'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "The God of Israel says to let his people go!" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

the God of Israel

This could be translated as: "God, who chose the Israelites to be his people" or "God, who rules the people of Israel" or "the God whom the Israelites worship."

Let my people go!

Other ways to say this are: "Allow my people to go free!" or "Free my people to leave Egypt!"

my people

See **my people** in [09:13](#).

But Pharaoh did not listen

The connecting word **But** connects what Moses and Aaron said God told Pharaoh to do (let his people go), with what he did (he did not listen to them). (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

listen to

This could be translated as: "heed" or "obey."

Instead of letting the Israelites go free

The connecting word **Instead** connects what Moses and Aaron told Pharaoh to do (listen to God and let his people go), with what Pharaoh did (make them work harder). (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

he forced them to work even harder!

This is a strong statement that Pharaoh not only did not free the Israelites, he made their lives even harder! (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [Aaron](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

10:02

Pharaoh kept refusing to let **the people** go, **so God sent ten terrible plagues** on Egypt. Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and **all of Egypt's gods**.

the people

This refers to the people of Israel, also called 'the Israelites.'

so God sent

The connecting word **so** connects the cause (Pharaoh made the Israelites work harder instead of letting them go), with the result (God sent ten terrible plagues on Egypt). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

ten terrible plagues

A plague is something very bad or terrible that happens to someone or something. A plague usually refers to something that affects many people or happens over a large geographic area. Another word for **plague** would be 'disaster.'

all of Egypt's gods

It may be more clear to say: "all the gods that the Egyptian people worshiped." The people of Egypt worshiped many different false gods. Some of these false gods did not exist. Other false gods that they worshiped were actually demons. Demons are not as powerful as the God of Israel.

Translation Words

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
-

10:03

God **turned the Nile River into blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

turned the Nile River into blood

Some languages may need to say: “turned the water in the Nile River into blood.” There was blood in the river instead of water, so the fish died and the people had no water to drink.

but Pharaoh still

The connecting word **but** contrasts God turning the river to blood with Pharaoh not letting the Israelites go. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - Israel, Israelites
-

10:04

God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh begged Moses to take away the frogs. But after all the frogs died, Pharaoh **hardened his heart** and would not let the Israelites leave Egypt.

God sent frogs all over Egypt

This could be translated as: “God caused many frogs to appear throughout Egypt.”

hardened his heart

He became stubborn again and refused to obey God. Here **hardened** is a synecdoche that refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart were hard. Alternate translation: “will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn” (See: [Synecdoche](#), [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - beg, beggar, needy
 - Moses
 - Israel, Israelites
-

10:05

So **God sent a plague of gnats**. Then he sent a plague of **flies**. Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt. When Moses prayed, God removed all the flies from Egypt. But Pharaoh **hardened his heart** and would not let the people go free.

God sent a plague

This could be translated as: "God caused there to be a plague" or "God caused a plague (of gnats) to come over the land of Egypt."

gnats

These were tiny, biting insects flying in large swarms, annoying and landing on all the people and animals of Egypt. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

flies

These were much bigger flying insects that were both annoying and destructive. There were so many of these flies that they covered everything, even filling the Egyptians' houses.

hardened his heart

See note in [10:04](#).

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Aaron](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

10:06

Next, God caused all the **farm animals** that belonged to the Egyptians to get sick and die. But Pharaoh's **heart was hardened**, and he would not let the Israelites go.

farm animals

This refers to large animals that the Egyptians used to help them in their work, such as horses, donkeys, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats.

heart was hardened

See note in [10:04](#).

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

10:07

Then God told Moses to throw ashes into the air in front of Pharaoh. When he did, painful skin sores appeared on the Egyptians, but not on the Israelites. **God hardened Pharaoh's heart**, and Pharaoh would not let the Israelites go free.

God hardened Pharaoh's heart

God caused Pharaoh to continue to be stubborn. See also note in [10:04](#).

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

10:08

After that, God sent hail that destroyed most of the crops in Egypt and killed anybody who went outside. **Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them, "I have sinned. You may go."** So Moses prayed, and the hail stopped falling from the sky.

After that

This refers to after God caused the painful sores to appear on the Egyptians' skin.

God sent hail

God caused hail to fall from the sky.

hail

Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does. These chunks can be very small or very large. The larger ones will hurt or kill whatever they fall on. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them, "I have sinned. You may go."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that he had sinned, and said that they could go." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

You may go

The word **You** refers to Moses, Aaron, and the Israelites.

Translation Words

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - Moses
 - Aaron
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - pray, prayer
-

10:09

But Pharaoh sinned again and **hardened his heart**. He would not let the Israelites go free.

hardened his heart

See note in [10:04](#).

Translation Words

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Israel, Israelites
-

10:10

So God caused **swarms of locusts** to come over Egypt. These locusts ate all the crops that **the hail** had not destroyed.

swarms of locusts

Locusts are grasshoppers that fly together in swarms, or large groups, and that can destroy large areas of all kinds of plants and food crops by eating them. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the hail

Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does.

Translation Words

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
-

10:11

Then **God sent darkness that lasted for three days**. It was so dark that the Egyptians could not leave their houses. But there was light where the Israelites lived.

God sent darkness

God caused darkness to cover or spread over most of Egypt. In other words, God took away the light from this part of Egypt.

that lasted for three days

This darkness was darker than ordinary nighttime darkness, and it continued to be totally dark for three whole days.

Translation Words

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Israel, Israelites
-

10:12

Even after **these nine plagues**, Pharaoh still refused to let the Israelites go free. **Since Pharaoh would not listen, God planned to send one last plague. This would change Pharaoh's mind.**

these nine plagues

This means: 'these nine disasters that God had caused.'

Since Pharaoh would not listen, God planned to send one last plague. This would change Pharaoh's mind.

The connecting word **Since** connects the action (God sending one last plague), with the reason (Pharaoh refused to let the Israelites go free). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Since Pharaoh would not listen

This could be translated as: "Since Pharaoh would not do what God was telling him to do" or "Since Pharaoh refused to obey God."

This would change Pharaoh's mind

Another way to say this would be: "This last plague would cause Pharaoh to change how he thought about God and, as a result, he would let the Israelites go free."

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 5-10

Translation Words

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Israel, Israelites
- God

11. The Passover

11:00

The Passover

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made the Passover festival" or "Why did God make the Passover festival? "

Passover

The term **Passover** is the name of a Jewish festival when they celebrate that God passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons when he killed the Egyptians.

11:01

God sent Moses and Aaron to tell Pharaoh to let the Israelites go. They warned him that, if he did not let them go, God would kill all **the firstborn males of Egypt's people and animals**. When Pharaoh heard this, he still refused to believe and obey God.

the firstborn males of Egypt's people and animals

This could be translated as: "the eldest son in every Egyptian family and the first male offspring of any of their animals."

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
-

11:02

God provided a way **to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him**. Each family had to choose **a perfect lamb** and kill it.

God provided

God is the only one who could provide the way to save the Israelites' sons from death.

to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him

This can be stated in active form: "for those who believed in him to save their firstborn son" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a perfect lamb

This could mean 'a young sheep or goat that had no blemishes or defects.'

Translation Words

- God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - son
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - lamb, Lamb of God
-

11:03

God told the Israelites to put the blood of this lamb around the door of their houses. They should roast the meat. Then they should quickly eat it, along with **unleavened bread**. He also told them to **be ready to leave Egypt immediately after they ate this meal**.

unleavened bread

Unleavened bread is bread that is prepared without yeast. Yeast is mixed into bread dough to make the dough expand and rise as it bakes. This could be translated as: "made without something that would make it rise." Making bread with yeast takes longer than without it, so unleavened bread shows that this meal was urgent and the people needed to do it quickly.

be ready to leave Egypt immediately after they ate this meal

This means they needed to be prepared to leave before they started to eat.

Translation Words

- God
 - Israel, Israelites
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - blood
 - Egypt, Egyptian
-

11:04

The Israelites did everything just as God had commanded them to do. In the middle of the night, God went throughout Egypt killing **every firstborn son**.

every firstborn son

This means every firstborn son of families who had not made the blood sacrifice, that is, the Egyptians. To make this clear you may want to add: "Every Egyptian firstborn son" (since all the Israelite families had put the blood on their doorposts).

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
-

11:05

All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God **passed over** those houses. Everybody inside them was safe. **They were saved because of the lamb's blood.**

passed over

This means that God passed by those houses and did not stop to kill anyone there. This phrase became the name of the Jewish festival, 'Passover.'

They were saved

God did not kill their firstborn son.

because of the lamb's blood

This could be translated as: "because the lamb's blood was on their door." God saw that they had killed their lamb as he had commanded, so he did not kill their son.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - blood
 - God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - lamb, Lamb of God
-

11:06

But the Egyptians **did not believe God or obey his commands**. So God **did not pass over** their houses. God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.

did not believe God or obey his commands

In some languages it may be more natural or clear to say: "did not believe God and so they did not obey his commands."

did not pass over

He did not pass by their houses. Rather, he stopped at each house and killed their eldest son.

Translation Words

- Egypt, Egyptian
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - God
-

11:07

Every Egyptian firstborn male died, **from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail to the firstborn of Pharaoh**. Many people in Egypt were crying and wailing because of their deep sadness.

from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail to the firstborn of Pharaoh

This is a way of saying that everyone's firstborn son died—from the son of the least important person to the son of the most important person, and everyone in between.

Translation Words

- Egypt, Egyptian
 - Pharaoh, king of Egypt
-

11:08

That same night, Pharaoh **called for** Moses and Aaron **and said, "Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!"** The Egyptian people also urged the Israelites to leave right away.

called for

This means that Pharaoh told his servants to tell Moses and Aaron to come to him.

and said

Pharaoh said the following words to Moses and Aaron after they came to him. In some languages this would be translated as: "and said to them," or "After they came, Pharaoh said to them."

and said, "Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "and told them to take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Take the Israelites and leave Egypt immediately!

This is a command. It is stated as an exclamation because Pharaoh was finally afraid of God and urgently wanted the Israelites to leave Egypt. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Take

The motion is away from the speaker, Pharaoh. Moses is commanded to take the Israelites away from Pharaoh and continue moving with them until they have left all of Egypt, the country where the speaker is located. (See: [Go and Come](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 11:1-12:32

Translation Words

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

12. The Exodus

12:00

The Exodus

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites left Egypt" or "What happened when God took the Israelites out of Egypt?" or "What happened when the Israelites left Egypt?"

Exodus

The term **Exodus** means 'leaving' or 'going out from.'

12:01

The Israelites were very happy to leave Egypt. **They were no longer slaves**, and they **were going to the Promised Land!** The Egyptians gave the Israelites whatever they asked for, even gold and silver and other valuable things. Some people from other nations believed in God and went along with the Israelites as they left Egypt.

They were no longer slaves

This could be translated as: "They were not slaves anymore."

were going

Some languages may use a more specific word like 'traveling' since they would be going a long distance to the Promised Land.

the Promised Land

This is the land that God had promised that he would give to Abraham's descendants.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Promised Land
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - God
-

12:02

A tall pillar of cloud went ahead of them during the day. It became **a tall pillar of fire** at night. God, who was in the pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire, was always with them and **guided them** as they traveled. All they had to do was follow him.

A tall pillar of cloud

This could be translated as: "A tall cloud" or "A cloud shaped like a pillar." This was not an actual pillar such as something that supports a building. In appearance it resembled a pillar, but it was made out of clouds. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a tall pillar of fire

This was a column of fire that hung or floated in the air in front of the Israelites. This was not an actual pillar such as something that supports a building. It resembled a pillar in appearance, but it was made out of fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))

guided them

God showed them the way by making the pillar move along in front of them so they could follow it.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
-

12:03

After a short time, Pharaoh and his people **changed their minds**. They wanted to make the Israelites their slaves again. **So they** chased after the Israelites. It was God who made them change their minds. He did this because he wanted everyone to know that he, Yahweh, is more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of the Egyptians.

After a short time

Probably at least two days had gone by. For that to be clear, it may be translated as: "After a few days" or "A few days after the Israelites left Egypt."

changed their minds

This phrase means 'began to think differently than they had before.' The Egyptians did not replace their minds, but made a decision that was not the same as the one they first made. They decided the Israelites should leave, but later decided that was the wrong choice and that they should have kept the Israelites as slaves. Some languages may not have this same expression, and will express the meaning in a direct way. (See: [Idiom](#))

So they

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Egyptians chased after the Israelites), with the reason (the Egyptians wanted the Israelites to be their slaves again). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
-

12:04

When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized **they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea**. They were very afraid and cried out, "**Why did we leave Egypt? We are going to die!**"

they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea

Another way to say this would be: "there was nowhere they could go to escape since the Egyptians were behind them and the Red Sea was in front of them."

Why did we leave Egypt?

The Israelites were not asking for reasons. Because they were afraid, in this moment they were wishing they had not left Egypt (even though it had been very difficult for them there). This could be a statement: "We should not have left Egypt!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

We are going to die!

This is a strong statement that expresses their certainty that the Egyptians would kill them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
-

12:05

Moses told the Israelites, "**Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.**"
Then God told Moses, "**Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.**"

Stop being afraid!

This is both a command and also an exclamation. Moses was telling the people in very strong terms that they were wrong to be afraid, rather than trusting God to protect them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

God will fight for you today and save you

Another way to say this would be: "Today God will defeat the Egyptians for you and keep them from harming you."

fight for you today and save you

Both occurrences of the pronoun **you** refers to all the Israelites. (See: [Pronouns](#))

Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Then God told Moses to tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to move

Some languages will be more specific and say: “to walk.”

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
 - [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
-

12:06

Then the pillar of cloud moved between the Israelites and the Egyptians and became a pillar of fire at night. The Egyptians were not able to come near the Israelites all night.

Then the pillar of cloud moved

The connecting word **Then** connects God’s instructions that the Israelites are to move forward with the pillar of cloud moving behind them. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

the pillar of cloud

See how you translated this phrase in [12:02](#).

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

12:07

God told Moses to **raise his hand over the sea**. **Then God caused** the wind to push the water in the sea to the left and the right, **so that** there was a path through the sea.

raise his hand over the sea

This could be translated as: “held out his hand over the sea.” This was a gesture to show that God was doing this miracle through Moses.

Then God caused

The connecting word **Then** connects Moses' action of obedience in raising his hand over the sea with the result (God caused the wind to blow). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

so that

The connecting words **so that** connect the wind blowing with the effect (the path through the sea for the Israelites). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Moses](#)
-

12:08

The Israelites **marched** through the sea on dry ground **with a wall of water on either side of them**.

marched

This can be translated as: "walked" or "went."

with a wall of water on either side of them

This could be translated as: "and the water on both sides of them stood up tall and straight like a wall."

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

12:09

Then the Egyptians saw that the Israelites were escaping. The Egyptians started chasing after them again.

12:10

So they followed the Israelites onto **the path through the sea**, **but God** caused the Egyptians **to panic** and caused their chariots **to get stuck**. They shouted, "**Run away! God is fighting for the Israelites!**"

So they followed the Israelites

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Egyptians followed the Israelites in to the sea), with the cause (God removed the cloud). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

the path through the sea

This was the dry strip of land across the bottom of the sea, with a wall of water on each side.

but God

The connecting word **but** contrasts the movement of the Israelites God caused by opening the path, with the lack of movement of the Egyptians God caused with their panic and chariots becoming stuck. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

to panic

This could be translated as: "to get fearful and confused."

to get stuck

The chariots could no longer move.

Run away!

This is both a command and also an exclamation. The Egyptians were so afraid when they realized that they were in great danger. (See: [Exclamations](#))

God is fighting for the Israelites!

This exclamation emphasizes the fear of the Egyptians when they realized that God had led them into a trap in the sea, and they were going to drown. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [chariot, charioteers](#)
-

12:11

The Israelites all arrived at the other side of the sea. **Then God** told Moses **to stretch out his hand again** over the water. When Moses did that, the water fell on the Egyptian army and **returned to its normal place. The whole Egyptian army** drowned.

to stretch out his hand again

This could be translated as: "lift his hand over the sea again" or, as a direct command, as in, "God told Moses, 'Stretch out your hand again.'"

Then God

The connecting word **Then** connects the action (the Israelites arriving safely on the other side of the Sea) with God's instructions to Moses to close the path through the sea. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

returned to its normal place

This could be translated as: "covered the place again where the path had been," or "filled the whole sea again" or "went back to where it was before God separated it."

The whole Egyptian army

This could be translated as: "everyone in Egypt's army."

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

12:12

When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted in God**. They believed that Moses was a prophet of God.

When the Israelites saw

The connecting word **When** connects the cause (God's destruction of the Egyptian army), with the effect (the Israelites trusted God). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

trusted in God

In other words, the people now trusted that God was powerful and could protect them.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-

12:13

The Israelites also **rejoiced very much because God had saved them** from dying and from being slaves. Now they were **free to worship** God and obey him. The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and **to praise God** because he saved them from the Egyptian army.

rejoiced very much

This could be translated as: “were very happy and they showed it enthusiastically” or “showed it with their whole hearts” or “with all their strength.”

because God had saved them

The connecting word **because** connects the result (the Israelites rejoiced), with the cause (God saved them). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

free to worship

God freed, or rescued, the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt so that they could serve him.

to praise God

In some languages this could be translated as: “to lift up God’s name” or “to say that God is great.”

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
 - [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)
 - [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
-

12:14

God commanded the Israelites to celebrate a festival every year **in order to remember how God had defeated** the Egyptians and freed them from being slaves. This festival was called **the Passover**. In it, they had to celebrate by killing a **healthy lamb**, roasting it, and eating it **with bread made without yeast**.

in order to

The connecting words **in order to** indicate the goal or purpose of the festival (to remind the Israelites and their descendants of how God had delivered them). (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

remember how God had defeated

This could be translated as: “regularly remind themselves of how God defeated.” The word **remember** here doesn’t just mean to not forget; it also means to formally commemorate something.

the Passover

This could be translated as: “the Passover activities” or “the Passover celebration” or “the Passover meal.”

healthy lamb

This here refers to a lamb with no disease or anything else wrong with it. Another way to say this might be “a completely healthy and well-formed lamb.”

with bread made without yeast

Another way to say this is: “unleavened bread.” See how you translated this in [11:03](#).

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 12:33-15:21

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

13. God's Covenant with Israel

13:00

God's Covenant with Israel

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made a covenant with Israel" or "How did God make a covenant with Israel?"

13:01

After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai. **This was the same mountain where Moses had seen the burning bush**. The people **set up their tents at the base of the mountain**.

After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea

This begins a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

This was the same mountain where Moses had seen the burning bush

This is background information about the mountain to which the Israelites traveled. (See: [Background Information](#))

burning bush

Before Moses returned to Egypt, God had spoken to him from a shrub that was on fire, but that was not burned up by the fire (See: [09:12](#)).

set up their tents

The Israelites had to travel a great distance from Egypt to the Promised Land. So they took tents with them so that they could set them up as shelters and sleep in them along the way. Some languages could translate this as: "hung their tents."

the base of the mountain

This could be translated as: "bottom of the mountain." This refers to the area of land that is located next to the place where the ground starts to slant upward to form a mountain.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
 - [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
 - [Moses](#)
-

13:02

God said to Moses and all the people of Israel, **“You must always obey me and keep the covenant I am making with you. If you do this, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”**

You must always obey me and keep the covenant I am making with you.

This is a direct command from God to all of the Israelites.

keep the covenant I am making with you

This could be translated as: “do what my covenant requires you to do.” Obeying and keeping the covenant are not two different things. One way to make this clear would be to say: “obey me by keeping the covenant I am making with you.” God will soon tell them what his covenant requires.

If you do this

The connecting word **If** introduces a conditional statement. The blessings are dependent on the Israelites obeying the commandments God had given. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

my prized possession

This could be translated as: “You will be my possession that I value most” or “You will be the people that I treasure more than any other group of people” or “You will be my own precious people.”

a kingdom of priests

God speaks of his people as if they were priests. Alternate translation: “a kingdom of people who are like priests” or “a kingdom of people who do what priests do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation

This could be translated as: “I will be your king and you will be like priests.” The Israelites were supposed to teach the other nations about God and be a mediator between God and the nations just as there were priests in the nation of Israel to go between God and the Israelites.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
 - [covenant](#)
 - [kingdom](#)
 - [priest, priesthood](#)
 - [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
-

13:03

For three days the people **made themselves ready for God to come near to them**. Then God came down to the top of Mount Sinai. When he came, there was thunder, lightning, smoke, and **sounds of loud trumpets**. Then **Moses went by himself** up the mountain.

For three days

In other words, three days after they arrived at Mount Sinai and God first spoke to them.

made themselves ready for God to come near to them

This refers to ceremonial cleansing in preparation to meet with God. This could be translated as: "got ready to meet with God" or "prepared themselves to meet with God."

sounds of loud trumpets

This could be translated as: "loud sounds came from horns" or "horns were blown and they made loud sounds" or "they heard the loud sounds of horns blowing." These trumpets were not blown by men, but by God or by his angels.

Moses went by himself

This could be translated as: "God permitted Moses to go up, but he did not permit anyone else to go."

Translation Words

- God
 - Sinai, Mount Sinai
 - Moses
-

13:04

Then God made a covenant with the people. He said, "I am Yahweh, your God. It is I who saved you from being slaves in Egypt. Do not worship any other god."

Then God made a covenant with the people. He said,

What God says next is the content of the covenant, that is, he tells the people the things that they must obey. This could be translated as: "Then God made this covenant with them:"

Yahweh, your God

In some languages it might be more natural to change the order and say "your God Yahweh." Make sure it does not sound like the Israelites had more than one God. It should be clear that Yahweh is the only God. Another way to translate this would be: "Yahweh, who is your God" or "your God, whose name is Yahweh."

who saved you from being slaves

This could be translated as: "I freed you from slavery."

Do not worship any other god.

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

Translation Words

- God
 - covenant
 - Yahweh
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - prostrate, worship
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
-

13:05

“Do not make idols and do not worship them, because I, Yahweh, must be your only God. Do not use my name in a disrespectful way. Be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy. In other words, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to remember me.”

Connecting Statement

God continues speaking to Moses.

Do not make idols

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

do not worship them

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

because

The connecting word **because** indicates the reason the Israelites were not to make idols or worship them (unlike other deities who did not care if people worshiped many other gods too, Yahweh was jealous of their worship). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Do not use my name in a disrespectful way

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites. This could be translated as: “Do not talk about me in a way that does not show respect and honor” or “Talk about me in a way that gives me proper respect and honor.”

Be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

do all your work in six days

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

the seventh day

To translate this, it is best to use the number (**seventh**) rather than give the name of a specific day of the week.

to remember me

This could be translated as: "to keep me in mind" or "to honor me."

Translation Words

- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - prostrate, worship
 - Yahweh
 - God
 - Sabbath
 - holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
-

13:06

"Honor your father and your mother. Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. **Do not lie.** Do not desire to have your neighbor's wife, his house, or anything that belongs to him."

Connecting Statement

God continues speaking to Moses.

Honor your father and your mother

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

Do not murder

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites.

Do not commit adultery

This is a command from God to all of the Israelites. This could be translated as: "Do not have sexual relations with someone else's spouse" or "Do not have marital relations with another man's wife or another woman's husband." Be sure to translate this in a way that doesn't offend or embarrass people. Languages often have an indirect, polite way of saying this, such as: "Do not sleep with." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Do not lie

This means: 'Do not say false things about other people.'

Translation Words

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
-

13:07

The people all agreed to obey the laws that God **had given them**. They agreed **to belong to God alone** and to worship only him.

had given them

This could be translated as: “had told them to obey.”

to belong to God alone

From among all the nations, God had chosen the Israelites for his special purpose. This could be translated as: “to be his special nation” or “to be his own people” or “to be the nation he chose to be his people.”

Translation Words

- God
 - Ten Commandments
 - Moses
 - law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
 - obey, obedient
 - promise, promised
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
-

13:08

God also told the Israelites to **make a large tent**—the Tent of Meeting. He told them exactly how to make this tent and what things to put in it. He told them to make a large curtain to separate the tent into two rooms. God would come into **the room behind the curtain** and stay there. Only the high priest was allowed to go into that room **where God was**.

make a large tent

This is background information about the tent the Israelites were to make as a place to worship God. (See: [Background Information](#))

the room behind the curtain

This room was hidden by the curtain. Some languages would call this room ‘the room in front of the curtain.’

where God was

If this phrase would lead people to think that God was limited to living in the tent, it could be translated as: “where God revealed Himself to humans.”

Translation Words

- God

- Israel, Israelites
 - tent of meeting
 - high priest, chief priests
-

13:09

The people must also make an altar in front of the Tent of Meeting. Anyone who had disobeyed **God's law** should bring an animal to that altar. A priest would then kill it and burn it on the altar as a sacrifice to God. God said that the animal's blood **would cover that person's sin**. In this way, God would not see that sin any longer. That person would become **clean in God's sight**. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

God's law

This refers to all the commandments and instructions that God had told the Israelites to obey.

would cover that person's sin

When people brought animals to sacrifice, God chose to see the blood of the animals as a covering over their sin. This is like hiding something that is ugly or dirty by covering it.

clean in God's sight

This could be translated as: "as if he did not have the sin according to God" or "free of the punishment for breaking God's law."

Translation Words

- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
 - tent of meeting
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - priest, priesthood
 - altar
 - blood
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Moses
 - Aaron
 - descend, descendant
-

13:10

God wrote **these Ten Commandments** on **two stone tablets** and gave them to Moses. **God also gave** the people many other laws and rules **to follow**. God promised to bless the people and protect them **if they obeyed** these laws. **But he said he would punish** them **if they did not obey** them.

these Ten Commandments

This refers to the commands God gave to Moses for the Israelites to obey. They are listed in frames [13:05](#) and [13:06](#).

two stone tablets

A tablet was a flat piece of stone or other hard material used in ancient times for writing. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

God also gave

This can be translated as: "God also told them."

to follow

This can be translated as: "that they must obey" or "that they must keep."

if they obeyed

The connecting word **if** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. God's blessing depends on the Israelites obeying the laws. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

But he said he would punish

The connecting word **But** contrasts how God would bless the Israelites if they obeyed him with how he would punish them if they did not obey him. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

if they did not obey

The connecting word **if** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. God would punish the Israelites if they did not obey the laws. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

Translation Words

- [obey, obedient](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

13:11

For many days, Moses remained on top of Mount Sinai. He was talking with God. But **the people became tired of waiting** for him to return to them. So they **brought gold** to Aaron and asked him to make an idol that they could worship instead of God. In this way, **they sinned terribly against God**.

the people became tired of waiting

This could be translated as: "the people became impatient because he did not return quickly" or "the people didn't want to wait any longer for him to return."

the people

This does not mean all the Israelite people, just the people who had grown tired of waiting for Moses. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brought gold

These were objects and jewelry made of gold, which could be melted and formed into other things.

they sinned terribly against God

They sinned in a way that was especially offensive to God. This could be translated as: "they sinned badly," or "they did something that was very bad" or "they did something bad that made God very angry."

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Aaron](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
-

13:12

Aaron **made a golden idol** in the shape of a calf. **The people began to wildly worship the idol and make sacrifices to it!** God was very angry with them **because** of their sin. God told Moses he wanted to destroy them. But Moses asked God not to kill them. God **listened to his prayer** and did not destroy them.

made a golden idol

Aaron took the things made of gold that the people had brought to him, melted them, combined them, and formed them into the shape of a calf.

The people began to wildly worship the idol and make sacrifices to it!

This is a strong statement that expresses how shocking it was that the people would worship this idol when they had seen what God had done for them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

to wildly worship

The people were sinning by worshiping the idol and also by doing sinful things as they worshiped it.

because

God had just told the Israelites that they were only to worship him because he was a jealous God, and if they did not obey they would be punished. For these reasons, God was very angry with the Israelites because of their sin. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

listened to his prayer

God always hears prayer. In this situation, **listened** means that God agreed to do what Moses asked.

Translation Words

- Aaron
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - prostrate, worship
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Moses
 - pray, prayer
-

13:13

When Moses came down from Mount Sinai, he was carrying the two stone tablets on which God had written the Ten Commandments. When Moses saw the idol, he was so angry that he **smashed the tablets**.

smashed the tablets

He threw the stone tablets down on the ground and they broke up into little pieces.

Translation Words

- Moses
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - God
 - Ten Commandments
-

13:14

Then Moses **burned the idol and ground it into powder**. He threw the powder into a stream and made the people drink the water. God sent **a plague** on the people and many of them died.

burned the idol and ground it into powder

Moses utterly destroyed the idol by pounding it into fine particles.

a plague

This plague may have been a serious illness. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made the people very sick." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- Moses
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - God
-

13:15

Moses made new stone tablets for the Ten Commandments to replace the ones that he had broken. Then he climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God **listened to** Moses and forgave them. Moses came back down the mountain with the Ten Commandments on the new tablets. Then God led the Israelites away from Mount Sinai toward the Promised Land.

Moses made

Moses carved the stone tablets with tools such as a hammer and chisel.

listened to

See how you translated this phrase in [13:12](#).

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 19-34

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [God](#)
- [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
- [Ten Commandments](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [Promised Land](#)

14. Wandering in the Wilderness

14:00

Wandering in the Wilderness

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites went about in the wilderness" or "What happened when the Israelites wandered in the wilderness?"

Wilderness

This refers to a dry, remote place where very few people live.

14:01

God finished telling the Israelites about all the laws that they must obey because of his covenant with them. Then he led them away from Mount Sinai. He wanted to take them to the Promised Land. This land was also called Canaan. God went ahead of them in **the pillar of cloud**, and they followed him.

General Information

This frame is background information that summarizes the previous two stories in preparation for a shift in the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

the pillar of cloud

See how you translated this phrase in [12:02](#).

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [covenant](#)
 - [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
-

14:02

God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. They were called **Canaanites**. The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.

God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants

This is background information that summarizes the stories of Genesis in preparation for a shift in the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

Canaanites

This frame explains who the Canaanites were and God's relationship with them in preparation for the introduction of a new major character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - promise, promised
 - Abraham, Abram
 - Isaac
 - Israel, Israelite, Jacob
 - Promised Land
 - descend, descendant
 - people, people group,
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - prostrate, worship
 - obey, obedient
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
-

14:03

God told the Israelites, "After you go into the Promised Land, **you must get rid of all the Canaanites there. Do not make peace with them and do not marry them.** You must completely destroy all of their idols. **If you do not obey me, you will end up worshiping their idols** instead of me."

you must get rid of all the Canaanites there

This is a polite way to say that they were to kill or drive out all the Canaanites out of the Promised Land. This could be translated as: "must get all the Canaanites out of the land" or "must remove from the land all of the Canaanites who are living there." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Do not make peace with them

This could be translated as: "Do not live peacefully among or alongside them" or "Do not promise to live peacefully with them."

do not marry them

God did not want any Israelite person to marry any Canaanite person.

If you do not obey me

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If the Israelites do not obey God by driving out the Canaanites, in time they will also disobey God by worshiping the idols of the Canaanites. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

you will end up worshiping their idols

If the Israelites became friends with the Canaanites and did not destroy the idols, they would be tempted to worship those idols instead of God.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
 - [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
-

14:04

When the Israelites reached the **border** of Canaan, Moses chose 12 men, one from each **tribe of Israel**. He gave the men instructions to **go and spy on the land** to see what it was like. They were also **to spy on the Canaanites to see if they were strong or weak**.

border

a line separating two countries, a boundary (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

tribe of Israel

This refers to the descendants of each of the sons of Jacob. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

go and spy

The Israelites were to go from where they were camped to the land of Canaan and spy in the land of Canaan. (See: [Go and Come](#))

spy on the land

This could be translated as: “secretly get information about the land” or “secretly learn about the land.” Part of the spies’ task was to find out what kinds of food the land could produce.

to spy on the Canaanites

This could be translated as: “secretly get information about the people of Canaan” or “secretly learn about the Canaanites.”

to see if they were strong or weak

They wanted to know if the Canaanites were prepared to fight against them. This could be translated as: "to find out how powerful the Canaanite armies were."

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Moses](#)
-

14:05

The 12 men traveled through Canaan for 40 days, and then **they came back. They told the people, "The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!"** But ten of the spies said, **"The cities are very strong and the people are giants! If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!"**

they came back

They returned to where the rest of the Israelites were waiting, just outside the border of Canaan. This can be clearly stated: "they returned to the camp of the Israelites." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They told the people, "The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "They told the people that the land was very fertile and the crops were plentiful!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the land was extremely good. (See: [Exclamations](#))

The cities are very strong and the people are giants!

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the inhabitants of the land were extremely large and powerful soldiers. (See: [Exclamations](#))

The cities are very strong

The cities had strong walls around them, so it would be very difficult for the Israelites to attack them.

the people are giants

This was not simply referring to unusually tall people, but a particular race of people that were far larger than even the tallest normal people. This could be translated as: "the people are like giants compared to us!" or "the people are much taller and stronger than we are!" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!

This is a strong statement that emphasizes that the Israelites were certain the Canaanites would defeat them in battle. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
-

14:06

Immediately, Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, **“It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!”**

It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!

This is a strong statement that even though the people of Canaan were large, God was even bigger and would enable the Israelites to defeat them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

the people of Canaan

This could be translated as: “the people who live in Canaan” or “the Canaanites.”

but we can certainly

The connecting word **but** indicates that there was an exceptional reason why the Canaanites would be defeated rather than the Israelites. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!

To show the connection between these two statements, it may be necessary to say: “we can certainly defeat them because God will fight for us!”

God will fight for us!

This could be translated as: “God will fight alongside us and help us defeat them!” This makes it clear that the Israelites would also be fighting against the Canaanites.

Translation Words

- [Caleb](#)
 - [Joshua](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [God](#)
-

14:07

But the people did not listen to Caleb and Joshua. They became angry with Moses and Aaron and said, **“Why did you bring us to this horrible place?** We should have stayed in Egypt. If we go into the land, we will die in battle, and the Canaanites will make our wives and children to be slaves.” The people wanted to choose a different leader to take them back to Egypt.

But the people did not listen

The connecting word **But** indicates that in contrast to Joshua and Caleb's reasoning, the people refused to listen. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Why did you bring us to this horrible place?

The people were not expecting an answer from Moses or from God. Alternate translation: "You should not have brought us to this horrible place." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

this horrible place

They considered Canaan to be **horrible** because they thought it was so dangerous that they would all be killed.

Translation Words

- Caleb
 - Joshua
 - Moses
 - Aaron
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

14:08

When the people said this, God was very angry. **He came to** the Tent of Meeting and said, "You have rebelled against me, **so all of you** will have **to wander in the wilderness**. Everyone who is 20 years or older will die there and never enter the land I am giving you. Only Joshua and Caleb will enter it."

He came to

God did not appear as a person, but came in some other form that showed his glory and power.

so all of you

The connecting word **so** connects the action or reason with the consequence. The people rebelled against God, and for this reason or as a result, they would have to wander in the wilderness. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

to wander in the wilderness

God would lead the people around in the wilderness with no specific destination until all of the adults who rebelled against him died.

Translation Words

- God
- tent of meeting
- Joshua
- Caleb
- Promised Land

14:09

When the people heard God say this, they were sorry **they had sinned**. **So they decided** to attack the people of Canaan. **Moses warned them not to go because God would not go with them, but they did not listen to him**.

When the people heard God say this

The connecting word **When** connects the action or reason with the result. As a result of hearing God's judgment, the people became sorry they had sinned. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

they had sinned

It may be necessary to add: "they had sinned by disobeying God's command to conquer the peoples of Canaan."

So they decided

The connecting word **So** connects the action or reason with the result. As a result of being sorry they had sinned, the people of Israel attacked the people of Canaan. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Moses warned them not to go

This means that Moses told them not to go to fight against the Canaanites because they would be in danger if they did that.

because God would not go with them

The connecting word **because** connects the action (Moses warning them) with the reason (God not going with them). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

God would not go with them

In other words, God would not be with them to help them. Because of the Israelites' disobedience, God withdrew from them his presence, protection, and power.

but they did not listen to him

They did not obey Moses. They went to attack the Canaanites anyway. The connecting word **but** indicates an exception relationship. The Israelites decided to attack the Canaanites even though Moses had warned them not to do that. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

Translation Words

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [God](#)
-

14:10

God did not go with them into this battle, so the Canaanites defeated them and killed many of them. Then the Israelites **turned back from Canaan**. For the next 40 years, they would **wander through the wilderness**.

God did not go with them into this battle

In other words, God did not help them in this fight.

so the Canaanites defeated them and killed many of them

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God did not go with them into this battle), with two results (the Canaanites defeated them, and the Canaanites killed many of them). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

turned back from Canaan

They left Canaan and went back into the wilderness where they were before.

wander through the wilderness

They lived in the wilderness, and together they moved from place to place in that large, dry land, looking for food and water for themselves and their animals.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
-

14:11

During the 40 years that the people of Israel wandered in the wilderness, **God provided for them**. He gave them **bread from heaven, called manna**. **He also sent flocks of quail (which are medium-sized birds)** into **their camp** so they could have meat to eat. During all that time, God kept their clothes and sandals from wearing out.

God provided for them

This could be translated as: "God gave them everything they needed for food, water, and shelter."

bread from heaven, called manna

Overnight, this thin, bread-like food fell onto the grass like dew from the sky. They called it **manna**. Almost every day the people gathered this manna and cooked it as their food. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

He also sent flocks of quail (which are medium-sized birds)

Another way to say this would be: "He also caused a large number of quails to fly into their camp." If quails are unknown, a different, similar type bird could be used. Or it could be translated as: "a large number of medium-sized birds." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

their camp

The place where the Israelites set up their tents to sleep in was called a **camp**. It was like a city with tents instead of buildings, and it could be moved around.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
-

14:12

To provide them with water to drink, God miraculously made it come out of a rock. But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. **Even so, God was still faithful. He did what he promised that he would do for the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.**

To provide them with water to drink, God miraculously made it come out of a rock.

This could be translated as: "By doing something that only God can do, he made water pour out of a rock so the people and animals could drink."

But despite all this

This could be translated as: "But even though God provided food, water, clothing, and everything that they needed." The connecting word **But** contrasts God's many gifts that have been listed with Israel's complaining against God and his servant Moses. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Even so

This could be translated as: "Even though the Israelites complained and grumbled against him." The connecting words **Even so** contrast Israel's complaining with God's faithfulness. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

God was still faithful. He did what he promised that he would do for the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob

This could be translated as: "God continued to do what he had told Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob he would do." He provided their descendants with what they needed so that they could live and become a great nation and eventually own the land of Canaan."

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)

- [promise, promised](#)
 - [Abraham, Abram](#)
 - [Isaac](#)
 - [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
-

14:13

Another time when the people did not have any water, God told Moses, “Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.” But Moses did not speak to the rock. **Instead**, he hit the rock twice with a stick. In this way, **he dishonored God**. Water came out of the rock for everyone to drink, but God was angry with Moses. He said, **“Because you did this, you will not enter the Promised Land.”**

Another time when the people did not have any water

From the previous story, it transitions to another story about when the people did not have water. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

God told Moses, “Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.”

This is an imperative and a direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Moses to speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Instead

The connecting word **Instead** emphasizes the exceptional relationship. Moses disobeyed by hitting the rock even though God himself commanded him to speak to it. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

he dishonored God

This could be translated as: “Moses disobeyed God” or “Moses disrespected God.” God had a specific way He wanted Moses to show the people God’s power to provide for them. When Moses disobeyed God by doing it in a different way, he showed a lack of respect for God.

Because you did this

The connecting words **Because you did this** connect the reason (Moses’ disobedience) with the result (God not allowing him to enter the Promise Land). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
-

14:14

After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for 40 years, all of those who had rebelled against God were dead. Then God led **the people** to the edge of the Promised Land

again. Moses was now very old, **so God chose** Joshua to lead the people. God also promised Moses that **one day** he would send to the people **another prophet like Moses**.

After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for 40 years

This begins a new event. It transitions from the time of wandering, God's judgment on Israel, to what lies ahead for their descendants. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

who had rebelled against God

This could be translated as: "who had refused to obey God when he told them to go into the Promised Land."

the people

The people refers to the children of the generation that died.

so God chose

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Moses' old age) with the result (God choosing someone else to lead Israel). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

one day

This means: 'some time in the future.'

another prophet like Moses

Like Moses, this man would be an Israelite, he would speak God's words to the people, and he would lead the people.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [Joshua](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-

14:15

Then God told Moses to go to the top of a mountain so he could see the Promised Land. Moses saw the Promised Land **but God did not permit him to enter** it. Then Moses died, and the Israelites **mourned for 30 days**. Joshua became their new leader. Joshua was a good leader **because he trusted and obeyed God**.

but God did not permit him to enter

The connecting word **but** introduces the fact that Moses was able to see the Promised Land even though God did not allow him to enter it. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

mourned for 30 days

For 30 days all the people of Israel cried and showed that they were very sad that Moses had died.

because he trusted and obeyed God.

The connecting word **because** connects Joshua's trust in and obedience to God with the result (he was a good leader). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Exodus 16-17; Numbers 10-14; 20; 27; Deuteronomy 34

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Promised Land](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [obey, obedient](#)

15. The Promised Land

15:00

The Promised Land

This title can also be translated as: "About how God gave the Promised Land to the Israelites" or "How did God give the Promised Land to the Israelites?"

Promised Land

This refers to the land of Canaan that God promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

15:01

At last it was time for the Israelites to enter Canaan, the Promised Land. **In that land was a city called Jericho. It had strong walls around it to protect it. Joshua sent two spies to that city. In that city lived a prostitute named Rahab.** She hid these spies, and later she helped them **to escape** from the city. She did this because she believed God. The spies promised to protect Rahab and **her family** when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.

At last it was time for the Israelites to enter Canaan

This begins a new event. The Israelites were about to enter into the Promised Land. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

At last it was time for

'At last' means 'finally' or 'after a long wait.' To make it clear what **time** refers to, you could say: "after they had wandered in the desert for 40 years, God finally permitted..."

In that land was a city called Jericho. It had strong walls around it to protect it. Joshua sent two spies to that city. In that city lived a prostitute named Rahab.

This is background information about the city of Jericho which Israel would attack, and Rahab who would help them. (See: [Background Information](#))

two spies to that city

This could be translated as: "two men to that city to find out information about it." Also see the notes for "spy out the land" in [14:04](#).

had strong walls around it to protect it

This could be translated as: "was completely surrounded by thick, strong walls made of stone to protect the city from enemies."

to escape

It is also possible to add: "escape from people in Jericho who wanted to harm them."

her family

Rahab asked for protection for her father, mother, brothers, and sisters. Use your word for family that includes these people.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - Promised Land
 - Joshua
 - Jericho
 - Rahab
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - God
 - promise, promised
-

15:02

The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land. **God told Joshua, “Have the priests go first.”** When the priests started to step into the Jordan River, **the water upstream stopped flowing** so the Israelites could **cross over** to the other side of the river on dry ground.

God told Joshua, “Have the priests go first.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God told Joshua to have the priests go first.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Have the priests go first

For some languages, it may be helpful to add: “Have the priests go before the rest of the people to cross the river.”

the water upstream stopped flowing

In some languages, it may be helpful to add: “and the water in front of them flowed away downstream.”

upstream

This word refers to the direction from which the Jordan River water flows. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

cross over

This means to pass from one side to another (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Promised Land
- God
- Joshua

- [priest, priesthood](#)
-

15:03

After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua to get ready to attack the city of Jericho, **even though it was very strong**. God told the people that their priests and soldiers must march around the city **once a day for six days**. **So the priests and the soldiers did this**.

After the people crossed the Jordan River

The connecting word **After** introduces sequential action. The Israelites obeyed God by passing from one side of the Jordan to the other. Once that was completed, God gave another task for them to do. In some languages, it is better to say: "The people crossed the Jordan River and then..." (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

even though it was very strong

The connecting words **even though** represent a factual condition. The city of Jericho was indeed very strong, so attacking of the city would seem to be an unwise choice. (See: [Connect - Factual Conditions](#))

once a day for six days

That is, they went around the city one time every day for a total of six days.

So the priests and the soldiers did this

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the priests and soldiers marching), with the reason (God's command). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Joshua](#)
 - [Jericho](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
 - [priest, priesthood](#)
-

15:04

God also said that on the seventh day the Israelites must march around the city seven times. **Then the priests must blow their trumpets** and all the people must shout loudly. So they did this.

Then the priests must blow their trumpets

The connecting word **Then** introduces sequential action. The priests were to blow their trumpets after the Israelites had finished marching around the city seven times. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

must blow their trumpets

This could be translated as: “must sound their trumpets” or “must play their trumpets.” These trumpets were made out of ram’s horns.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [priest, priesthood](#)
-

15:05

Then the walls around Jericho fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city, as God had commanded. They only spared Rahab and her family, **who became part of the Israelites**. When the other people living in Canaan heard that the Israelites had destroyed Jericho, they were terrified that the Israelites would attack them also.

Then the walls around Jericho fell down!

This is a strong statement. It emphasizes how surprising it was that the strong walls fell down when the Israelites blew the trumpets. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Then the walls around Jericho fell down

The implication is that God caused the walls to fall. The walls were thick enough to drive chariots upon. People lived inside them. These were not flimsy walls. In order for them to fall, an act of God would have to happen. This could be stated in active form: “Then God caused the walls of Jericho to fall down!” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Then the walls

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The Israelites followed all of God’s commands, and then this event happened. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

who became part of the Israelites

This can be translated as: “who then joined the Israelite community” or “who then became members of the nation of Israel.”

Translation Words

- [Jericho](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Rahab](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
-

15:06

God had commanded the Israelites not to make **a peace treaty** with any of the people groups in Canaan. **But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites, lied to Joshua**

and said they were from a place far from Canaan. They asked Joshua to make a peace treaty with them. Joshua and the other leaders of the Israelites did not ask God what they should do. **Instead**, they made a peace treaty with the Gibeonites.

a peace treaty

This is an agreement between two groups of people that they will not harm each other but will live in peace and help each other. This could be translated as: "peace agreement."

But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites

Some languages may introduce this as: "But one day a Canaanite people group by the name of the Gibeonites..."

But one of the Canaanite people groups

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's command that the Israelites not make any treaties with the people of Canaan with the reason Joshua made an agreement with Gibeonites. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

lied to Joshua and said

This could be translated as: "They lied to Joshua by saying" or "They falsely said to Joshua" or "They falsely told Joshua."

Instead

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts what Joshua should have done (ask God what they should do), with what he did do (out of ignorance make the treaty God had forbidden). (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [Joshua](#)

15:07

Three days later, the Israelites **found out** that the Gibeonites really did live in Canaan. They were angry because the Gibeonites had deceived them. **But they kept the peace treaty** they had made with them because it was a promise before God. **Then, some time later**, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, **so they combined their armies** into one large army and attacked Gibeon. The Gibeonites **sent a message to Joshua asking for help**.

found out

This verbal phrase means 'discovered.' (See: [Idiom](#))

But they kept the peace treaty

The connecting word **But** contrasts the Gibeonites' deception of the Israelites with the Israelites keeping their promise to the Gibeonites. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Then, some time later

This begins a new event. This event happened after the treaty was made but is indirectly a result of it. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

so they combined their armies

The connecting word **so** connects the result (the Amorites attacking Gibeon), with the reason (Gibeon's treaty with Israel). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

sent a message to Joshua asking for help

This could be translated as: "sent some of their people to tell Joshua that they needed the Israelites to help defend them against their enemies."

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
 - [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
 - [Amorite](#)
 - [Joshua](#)
-

15:08

So Joshua gathered the Israelite army. They marched all night **to reach the Gibeonites**. In the early morning, **they surprised the Amorite armies** and attacked them.

to reach the Gibeonites

This could mean 'to get to the Gibeonites' or 'to arrive at where the Gibeonites lived.' The Gibeonites lived in Canaan, but Canaan is big enough that it took all night for the Israelite army to travel from their camp to where the Gibeonites were.

they surprised the Amorite armies

The Amorites did not know that the Israelites were coming to attack them.

Translation Words

- [Joshua](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)

- [Amorite](#)
-

15:09

God fought for Israel that day. He **caused the Amorites to be confused** and he sent **large hailstones** that killed many of the Amorites.

God fought for Israel

God fought on the side of Israel against Israel's enemies.

caused the Amorites to be confused

This could be translated as: "made the Amorites panic" or "caused the Amorites to be unable to fight together well."

large hailstones

This could be translated as: "very large balls of ice to come down from the sky." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Amorite](#)
-

15:10

God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites. On that day, God won a great victory for Israel.

15:11

After God defeated those armies, many of the other Canaanite people groups gathered together to attack Israel. Joshua and the Israelites **attacked and destroyed them**.

After God defeated those armies

The connecting word **After** introduces sequential action. God defeated one large army made up of many smaller armies. Then another large army, also made up of many smaller armies, came against Israel. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

attacked and destroyed them

This could be translated as: "fought against them and defeated them."

Translation Words

- Canaan, Canaanite
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Joshua
-

15:12

After these battles, **God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.**

God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land

This could be translated as: “God appointed each tribe its own plot of land” or “God decided which part of the Promised Land each tribe of Israel would live on.”

Then God gave Israel peace

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The fighting of the battles and the dividing of the Promised Land were completed, and then God gave Israel peace along its borders. OR Fighting the battles and dividing the Promised Land were completed. Then God gave Israel peace along its borders. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

gave Israel peace along all its borders

This could be translated as: “God allowed the Israelites to experience peace with the other people groups that surrounded them” or “God allowed the Israelites to experience peace with the other countries around Israel.”

Translation Words

- God
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Promised Land
 - peace, peaceful, peacemakers
-

15:13

When Joshua was an old man, he called all the people of Israel together. Then Joshua reminded the people that they had promised to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Mount Sinai. The people promised **to be faithful to God and obey his laws.**

When Joshua was an old man

This begins a new event. The story transitions from Joshua’s leadership of Israel to what is to happen to them next. It may be clearer to say: “Many years later, when Joshua was an old man.” Joshua was over 100 years old at this time. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

to be faithful to God

In other words, they would be loyal to God. They would worship and serve only God; they would not worship or serve any other gods.

obey his laws

This means that the people would obey the laws that God had already given them as part of the covenant.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Joshua 1-24

Translation Words

- Joshua
- Israel, Israelites
- obey, obedient
- covenant
- God
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- promise, promised
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

16. The Deliverers

16:00

The Deliverers

This title can also be translated as: "About how God rescued the Israelites from their enemies" or "Why did God need to rescue the Israelites from their enemies?"

Deliverers

This refers to the judges, or warriors, who God send to help the Israelites defeat their enemies and deliver them from their troubles.

16:01

After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God. They did not obey God's laws, **and they did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites from the Promised Land**. The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, **the true God**. The Israelites had no king, **so everyone did what they thought was right for themselves**.

After Joshua died

This begins a new event. In the previous story, Joshua reminded the Israelites of their promise to obey God. This story transitions to what the Israelites actually did after Joshua died. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

and they did not drive out

This tells how they disobeyed God, so in some languages it may be better to start this as a new sentence: "They did not..."

drive out the rest of the Canaanites from the Promised Land

This can be translated as: "fight with the rest of the Canaanites to force them to leave the Promised Land."

the true God

This could mean 'the only real God.' Yahweh is the only one that people should worship.

so everyone did what they thought

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Israel had no king), with the result (everyone did what they thought was right rather than what God said). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

what they thought was right for themselves

This means that they all did whatever they wanted to do, including many evil things.

Translation Words

• [Joshua](#)

- Israel, Israelites
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - God
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - obey, obedient
 - law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
 - prostrate, worship
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - Yahweh
 - true, truth
 - king, kingdom, kingship
-

16:02

By disobeying God, the Israelites started a pattern that repeated many times. The pattern went like this: the Israelites would disobey God for several years, then he would punish them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. These enemies would steal things from the Israelites, destroy their property, and kill many of them. **Then after Israel's enemies oppressed them** for many years, the Israelites would repent of their sin and **ask God to rescue them**.

Then after Israel's enemies oppressed them

The connecting word **Then** connects the reason (Israel's enemies would oppress them), with the result (Israel would repent and ask God to rescue them). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

ask God to rescue them

That is, they asked God to help them and to set them free from their enemies.

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - God
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - repent, repentance
-

16:03

Each time the Israelites repented, God would rescue them. He did this **by providing** a deliverer—a person who would fight against their enemies and defeat them. Then **there would be peace in the land** and the deliverer would rule over them well. God sent many deliverers to rescue the people. God did this again after he allowed the Midianites, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat the Israelites.

by providing

This could be translated as: "by choosing" or "by appointing."

there would be peace

This could be translated as: “the people could live without fear” or “ their enemies stopped attacking them.”

the land

That refers to Canaan, the Promised Land that God had given to Abraham.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)
 - [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
 - [Midian, Midianite](#)
-

16:04

The Midianites took all of the Israelites’ **crops** for seven years. The Israelites **were so scared, they hid** in caves so the Midianites would not find them. **Finally, they cried out** to God **to save them**.

crops

This refers to edible plants that the Israelites were growing in their gardens or fields.

were so scared, they hid

This could be translated as: “were very afraid of the Midianites, so they hid.”

Finally

This begins a new event. Signals a shift from the Midianites’ oppression and Israel’s suffering to Israel’s repentance and God’s deliverance. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

they cried out

This might be translated as: “they called out” or “they prayed desperately.”

to save them

This might be translated as: “to set them free” or “to rescue them from these enemies.”

Translation Words

- [Midian, Midianite](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
-

16:05

There was an Israelite man name Gideon. **One day**, he was **threshing grain** in a hidden place so the Midianites would not steal it. The angel of Yahweh came to Gideon and said, "**God is with you**, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

threshing grain

The grain was wheat, which has a head of many small grains, or seeds, on the top of a thin stalk. **Threshing** is separating the seeds of the plant from the stalks by beating the heads of grain. The seeds are food, but the stalks are not.

God is with you

This means: 'God is present with you in a special way' or 'God has plans to use you in a special way.'

Translation Words

- Gideon
 - Midian, Midianite
 - angel, archangel
 - Yahweh
 - God
 - Israel, Israelites
-

16:06

Gideon's father had an altar dedicated to an idol. The first thing God told Gideon to do was **to tear down** that altar. **But Gideon was afraid of the people, so he waited until nighttime.** Then he tore down the altar and smashed it to pieces. He built a new altar to God nearby and made a sacrifice to God on it.

to tear down

This means: 'to violently bring down' or 'to take down and destroy.'

But Gideon was afraid of the people

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's command (tear down the altar), with the reason for Gideon's delayed obedience (he was afraid). (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

afraid of the people

Gideon was afraid that his fellow Israelites who worshiped the same idol would be angry with him.

so he waited until nighttime

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Gideon was afraid of the people), with the result (he waited until nighttime to obey). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

waited until nighttime

Another way to say this would be: "waited until after dark." Gideon smashed the altar at night, when everyone was asleep so that no one would see him do it.

Translation Words

- [Gideon](#)
 - [altar](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
-

16:07

The next morning the people saw that someone had torn down and destroyed the altar, and they were very angry. They went to Gideon's house to kill him, but **Gideon's father said, "Why are you trying to help your god? If he is a god, let him protect himself!"** Because he said **this**, the people did not kill Gideon.

Gideon's father said, "Why are you trying to help your god? If he is a god, let him protect himself!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Gideon's father asked why they were trying to help their god. If he is a god, he should be able to protect himself!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Why are you trying to help your god?

This is not a real question that asks for information. Another way of saying this would be: "You should not be trying to help your god" or "You should not need to help your god." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

If he is a god, let him protect himself

This is a strong statement that if the idol were truly a god, he would be able to protect himself. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Because he said this

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (Gideon's father's defense), with the result (the people did not kill Gideon). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [altar](#)
 - [Gideon](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
-

16:08

Then the Midianites came again to steal from the Israelites. There were so many of them that **they could not be counted.** Gideon called the Israelites together to fight them. Gideon asked God **for two signs** so he could be sure that God was really telling him **to save Israel.**

Then the Midianites came again

The connecting word **Then** indicates sequential action. God called Gideon, and then the Midianites returned. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

came again to steal from the Israelites

This could be translated as: "came again to the Israelites' land to steal things from them."

they could not be counted

This could be translated as: "The number of the Midianites was too great to count" or "it would be very difficult to count all of the Midianites."

for two signs

This could be translated as: "to do two miracles" or "to make two impossible things happen."

to save Israel

This could be translated as: "to rescue Israel from the Midianites."

Translation Words

- [Midian, Midianite](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Gideon](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
-

16:09

For the first **sign**, Gideon laid a **sheepskin** on the ground and asked God to **let the morning dew fall** only on the sheepskin and not on the ground. **God did that.** The next night, he asked that the ground be wet but the sheepskin dry. God did that, too. **Because of these two signs**, Gideon believed that God really wanted him to save Israel from the Midianites.

sign

This could be translated as: "miracle" or "impossible thing."

sheepskin

This is the skin of a sheep that has all of the wool on it. Wool is a very thick and curly hair that would hold a lot of water. Translate this so that it is clear that this skin is covered with thick, soft hair.

let the morning dew fall

This can be translated as: “make the morning dew appear” or “make the morning dew come up.” **Dew** refers to the drops of water that form on cool surfaces at night. Dew naturally covers everything equally.

God did that

This could be translated as: “God did what Gideon asked him to do.”

Because of these two signs

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (the two signs), with the result (Gideon believed God wanted to deliver Israel through him). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Gideon](#)
 - [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Midian, Midianite](#)
-

16:10

Then Gideon called for soldiers to come to him, and 32,000 men came. But God told him this was too many. **So Gideon sent home 22,000 men**, all who were afraid to fight. God told Gideon that he still had **too many men**. So Gideon sent all of them home **except for 300 soldiers**.

Then Gideon called for soldiers to come to him, and 32,000 men came.

Some languages might need to say why he called the soldiers: “When Gideon called the Israelites to come fight against the Midianites, 32,000 soldiers came to him” (See: [16:08](#)).

32,000

This could also be written in words: “thirty-two thousand men.” (See: [Numbers](#))

But God told him

The connecting word **But** contrasts the number of men who came to fight compared with God’s view of the number he wanted. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

22,000

This could also be written in words: “twenty-two thousand.” (See: [Numbers](#))

too many men

This was more soldiers than God wanted for this fight. If that many soldiers fought and won, they would think that they won the battle with their own strength, and they would not know that God did it.

So Gideon sent home 22,000 men

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (God told Gideon there were too many men), with the result (Gideon sent home 22,000 men). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

except for 300 soldiers

This sentence could be translated as: "So Gideon allowed only 300 men to stay, and the rest of the men went home."

300

This could also be written in words: "three hundred." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Gideon](#)
 - [God](#)
-

16:11

That night **God told Gideon, "Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When you hear what they say, you will no longer be afraid to attack them."** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about **something he had dreamed**. The man's friend said, **"This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat us, the Midianite army!"** When Gideon heard this, he worshiped God.

God told Gideon, "Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When you hear what they say, you will no longer be afraid to attack them."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "God told Gideon to go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When he would hear what they would say, he would no longer be afraid to attack them." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk.

God gives Gideon a command that includes instruction on what he is to do.

Go down

The Midianite soldiers were camping out in a valley and were at a lower elevation than the Israelite soldiers.

you will no longer be afraid

This could mean 'you will stop being afraid.'

something he had dreamed

This could mean 'something he had seen in a dream' or 'a dream he had had.'

This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat us, the Midianite army!

This is a strong statement by the enemy soldier that Gideon would defeat them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

When Gideon heard this

The connecting word **When** connects the action or reason with the result. Gideon worshiped God as a result of hearing the interpretation of the soldier's dream. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Gideon](#)
 - [Midian, Midianite](#)
 - [dream](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
-

16:12

Then Gideon returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a **horn**, a clay pot, and a **burning torch**. They surrounded the camp where the Midianite soldiers were sleeping. Gideon's 300 soldiers had the torches in the pots **so the Midianites could not see** the light of the torches.

Then Gideon returned to his soldiers

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause that connects Gideon hearing the dream and worshipping God with him rallying the 300 Israelites to fight the Midianites. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

horn

This could be translated as: "trumpet" or "ram's horn trumpet." These horns came from rams, or male sheep, and were often used to call men for battle.

a burning torch

This was probably a piece of wood wrapped with cloth and soaked in oil so that it could burn well. (This was not the modern torch that runs on batteries.)

so the Midianites could not see

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (the torches were in the pots), with the result (the Midianites could not see the light of the torches). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Gideon](#)
- [Midian, Midianite](#)

16:13

Then, all of Gideon's soldiers broke their pots at the same moment, suddenly revealing the fire of the torches. They blew their horns and **shouted, "A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!"**

Then, all of Gideon's soldiers broke their pots

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. Gideon's men surrounding the Midianite camp, and then they broke their pots at the same moment. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

shouted

This could be translated as: "yelled loudly" or "said with a very loud voice."

A sword

A sword is a weapon that has a long sharp blade and a handle at one end. People hold the handle and hit or stab the enemy with the sharp blade. If your people don't have a weapon just like this, you could translate it as: "A long knife" or "A machete" or "A bush knife."

sword

Here **sword** is a metonym that refers to their fighting. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon" (See: [Metonymy](#))

A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!

This is a strong statement that Gideon was depending on Yahweh, and not the sword, for his victory. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Gideon](#)
 - [Yahweh](#)
-

16:14

God confused the Midianites so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Immediately, Gideon sent messengers to call **many other Israelites** to come from their homes and help chase the Midianites. They killed many of them and chased the rest of them out of the Israelites' land. God caused **120,000** Midianites to die that day. This is how God saved Israel.

God confused the Midianites

God caused the Midianites to be confused. They wanted to attack the Israelites, but instead, they attacked each other.

so that they started attacking and killing each other

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God confused the Midianites), with the result (they started attacking and killing each other). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

many other Israelites

This could be translated as: “many other Israelite men.” This refers to the soldiers previously sent home in [16:10](#).

120,000

This could also be written in words: “one hundred and twenty thousand.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Midian, Midianite](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
-

16:15

The people wanted to make Gideon their king. Gideon **did not allow them to do this, but he asked them** for some of the gold rings that each of them had taken from the Midianites. The people gave Gideon a large amount of gold.

did not allow them to do this

Gideon knew that it was better for the Israelites to have God as their king.

but he asked them

This phrase starts with **but** because what he did next was not wise.

Translation Words

- [Gideon](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Midian, Midianite](#)
-

16:16

Then **Gideon used the gold to make a special garment** like the high priest used to wear. **But the people started worshipping it** as if it were an idol. **So God punished Israel again** because they worshiped idols. God allowed their enemies to defeat them. They finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer to rescue them.

Gideon used the gold to make a special garment

This could be translated as: "Gideon melted down the gold objects the people had given him and formed a special garment out of that gold."

But the people started worshipping it

The connecting word **But** contrasts God's deliverance of Israel from the Midianites with them worshipping the gold garment. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

So God punished Israel again

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (Israel started worshipping the garment as an idol), with the result (God punished them again). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Gideon
 - high priest, chief priests
 - prostrate, worship
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - God
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - Israel, Israelites
 - deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
-

16:17

This same thing happened many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send someone to rescue them. Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

16:18

Finally, the people **asked God for a king like all the other nations had**. They wanted a king who was tall and strong, and who could lead them into battle. **God did not like this request, but he gave them a king** just as they had asked.

Finally

The connecting word **Finally** indicates a shift from the time of deliverers sent by God to the time when Israel asked God for a king. This could be translated as: "After their enemies attacked them many times" or "After many years of being attacked by many different nations..." (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

asked God for a king

This could be translated as: "demanded that God give them a king" or "kept asking God for a king."

like all the other nations had

Other nations had a king. Israel wanted to be like them and have a king too.

God did not like this request

This could be translated as: "God did not agree with what they had asked him for." God knew that they were rejecting him as their ruler and were choosing to follow a human leader instead.

but he gave them a king

The connecting word **But** contrasts God not liking the request with him giving Israel a king. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Judges 1-3; 6-8; 1 Samuel 1-10

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

17. God's Covenant with David

17:00

God's Covenant with David

This title can also be translated as: "About when God made a covenant with David" or "What covenant did God make with David?"

17:01

Saul was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. Saul was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would **one day be king in his place.**

Saul was the first king of Israel

This introduces Saul as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

the first king of Israel

This could be translated as: the "first king to rule over Israel."

He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted

This is background information about Saul. (See: [Background Information](#))

one day

This could be translated as: "some time in the future" or "years later."

be king in his place

This is an idiom that means 'replace him as king.' Other ways to say this are: "take his place as king over Israel" or "rule as king instead of him." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- Saul (OT)
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - Israel, Israelites
 - obey, obedient
 - God
-

17:02

God chose a young Israelite named David and began to prepare him to one day become king after Saul. **David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem.** At different times, David killed both a lion and a bear that attacked his **father's sheep** while David was **watching** them. David was a humble and righteous man. He trusted and obeyed God.

God chose a young Israelite named David

This introduces David as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem.

This is background information about David. (See: [Background Information](#))

father's sheep

This refers to ownership. The sheep belonged to the father of David. (See: [Possession](#))

watching

This could mean 'caring for' or 'protecting' or 'taking care of.'

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [David](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Saul \(OT\)](#)
 - [shepherd, chief shepherd](#)
 - [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
 - [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
 - [humble, humbled, humility](#)
 - [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
 - [trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
-

17:03

When David was still a young man, he fought against **a giant named Goliath**. Goliath was a very good soldier. He was very strong and **about three meters tall!** But God helped David kill Goliath and save Israel. **After that**, David won many victories over Israel's enemies. David became a great soldier, and he led Israel's army in many battles. The people praised him very much.

a giant named Goliath

The word **giant** here describes a person who is unusually tall and powerful. Goliath was a huge soldier in an army that was fighting against Israel.

about three meters tall!

This is a strong statement that Goliath was extremely tall. (See: [Exclamations](#))

After that

The connecting words **After that** indicate the sequence of events. The first enemy of Israel that David defeated was Goliath, but after defeating Goliath, David went on to defeat many other enemies of Israel. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [David](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)
-

17:04

The people loved David so much that King Saul became jealous of him. **Finally** Saul wanted to kill him, so David ran away into the wilderness to hide from him and his soldiers. **One day** when Saul and his soldiers were looking for him, Saul went into a cave. It was the same cave that David was hiding in, but Saul did not see him. David went up very close behind Saul and cut off a piece of his clothing. Later, after Saul left the cave, David shouted to him to look at the cloth he was holding. **In this way**, Saul knew that David refused to kill him **to become king**.

Finally

The people praised David very much so King Saul became jealous. Now the story transitions to Saul not only feeling jealous but acting on that jealousy. **Finally** connects the reason for Saul's jealousy (the people loved David) with the result of Saul's jealousy (Saul wanted to kill David). (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#), [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

One day

The story transitions from explaining the general story (of Saul wanting to kill David) to a specific story (about Saul trying to kill David). This event happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

In this way

The connecting words **In this way** connect the reason (Saul saw that David had a piece of his clothing) with the result (Saul knew David would not kill him and try to become king). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

to become king

David would not dishonor God by killing the man that God placed as king over Israel.

Translation Words

- Saul (OT)
 - love, beloved
 - David
 - king, kingdom, kingship
-

17:05

Some time later, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him. God blessed David and **made him successful**. David fought many battles, **and God helped him defeat** Israel's enemies. David conquered the city of Jerusalem and made it **his capital city**, where he lived and ruled. David was king for 40 years. During this time, Israel became powerful and wealthy.

Some time later

The story transitions from Saul being king to David becoming king. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

made him successful

This could mean 'helped him accomplish the good things he wanted to do.'

and God helped him defeat

The connecting word **and** is acting as more than a simple conjunction. It indicates that God's blessing on David included his military efforts. David won many battles not because he was a great soldier, though he was, but because God helped him defeat Israel's enemies. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

his capital city

This could mean 'the capital city of his kingdom.' David lived in Jerusalem and ruled from there. The entire city does not belong to David, but because David is the supreme government leader and because David captured Jerusalem and made it the capital, it is often described as his. (See: [Possession](#))

capital city

It was the center of government for the country of Israel and it had the primary status above all the other cities in Israel. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- Saul (OT)
 - David
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - Israel, Israelites
 - love, beloved
 - God
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - Jerusalem
-

17:06

David wanted **to build a temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. For about **400** years, the people had been worshiping God and offering sacrifices to him at the Tent of Meeting that Moses had made.

to build a temple

David wanted to construct a permanent building for worshiping God that would replace the portable Tent of Meeting.

400

This could also be written in words: "four hundred." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- [David](#)
 - [temple](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
 - [tent of meeting](#)
 - [Moses](#)
-

17:07

But there was a prophet named Nathan. God sent him to tell David this: "You have fought in many wars, **so you will not build this Temple** for me. Your son will build it. **But still**, I will greatly bless you. **One of your descendants will rule as king over my people forever!**" The only descendant of David who could rule forever was the Messiah. The Messiah was **God's Chosen One** who would save the people of the world **from their sin**.

But there was a prophet named Nathan

The connecting word **But** contrasts David's desire to build a temple for God with God sending a prophet to David with a message. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

so you will not build

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (David had fought in many wars), with the result (God did not want David to be the one to build a temple). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

this Temple

This could mean 'this building for worship' or 'this place of worship.'

But still

The connecting words **But still** contrast God saying David could not build a temple with God's promise to bless David. If God had not said this, David might have thought God was angry with him for some reason or he had done something wrong and that was why God would not allow him to do this act of worship. This contrast relationship shows that there was nothing wrong between David and God. God showed His love for David through His promise to David that the Messiah would be his descendant. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

One of your descendants will rule as king over my people forever!

This is a surprising statement because people do not live forever. (See: [Exclamations](#))

God's Chosen One

This could be represented by a verbal phrase: "the One God chose." (See: [Possession](#))

from their sin

This could mean 'from the terrible consequences of their sin.'

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Nathan](#)
 - [David](#)
 - [temple](#)
 - [son](#)
 - [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [descend, descendant](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

17:08

When David heard Nathan's message, he thanked God and praised him. God was honoring him and giving him many blessings. **Of course**, David did not know when God would do these things. We know now that the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost **1,000** years.

When David heard Nathan's message

The connecting word **When** connects the reason (Nathan's message), with the result (David thanked and praised God). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Nathan's message

This could also be translated "the message Nathan gave." (See: [Possession](#))

Of course

The connecting words **Of course** indicate that David did not know when God would do these things, since God did not tell him when they would happen. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

1,000

This could also be written in words: "one thousand." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- David
 - praise, praised, praiseworthy
 - God
 - promise, promised
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Christ, Messiah
-

17:09

David ruled his people justly for many years. He obeyed God faithfully, and God blessed him. **However, in his later years**, he **sinned greatly** against God.

However, in his later years

The connecting word **However** contrasts David obeying God for many years with David sinning against God in his later years. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

in his later years

This may be translated as: "when David was older" or "later on in David's life."

sinned greatly

This could mean 'sinned in a very evil way.' David's sin was especially evil.

Translation Words

- David
 - just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
 - faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - God
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

17:10

One day, David looked out from his palace and **saw a beautiful woman bathing**. He did not know her, **but he found out** that **her name was Bathsheba**.

One day, David

We have many stories of David obeying God. Now a new story of when David sinned is being introduced. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

saw

Bathsheba may have been bathing at her own house, but David's palace was very high and he was able to see over walls that were lower.

a beautiful woman...her name was Bathsheba

This introduces Bathsheba as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

bathing

This may be translated as: "taking a bath" or "washing herself."

but he found out

The connecting word **but** contrasts David not knowing the woman with his finding out who she was. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [David](#)
 - [Bathsheba](#)
-

17:11

Instead of looking away, David sent someone to bring her to him. **He slept with her** and sent her back home. A short time later, Bathsheba sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.

Instead of looking away

The connecting word **Instead** contrasts what David should have done (look away), with what David did (sent someone to bring her to him). (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

He slept with her

In order to be polite, a euphemism is used to say David had sexual intercourse with Bathsheba. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words

- [David](#)
 - [Bathsheba](#)
-

17:12

Bathsheba's husband was a man named Uriah. He was one of David's best soldiers. He was away fighting in a war at this time. David called Uriah back from the battle and told him to **go be with his wife**. But Uriah refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. **So David sent Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him **where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed**. This is what happened: Uriah died in battle.

Bathsheba's husband was a man named Uriah

This introduces Bathsheba's husband, Uriah, as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

He was one of David's best soldiers. He was away fighting in a war at this time.

This is background information about who Uriah was. (See: [Background Information](#))

go be with his wife

This could mean 'go home to be intimate with his wife.' David wanted people, especially Uriah, to believe that Bathsheba was pregnant with Uriah's child.

So David sent Uriah

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Uriah refused to sleep with his wife), with the result (David sent him into great danger). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

where the enemy was strongest

This refers to the location in the battle where the most fighting was going on.

so that he would be killed

The connecting words **so that** connect the reason (David wanted Uriah killed), with the result (David told the general to put Uriah where the enemy was strongest and abandon him there). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Bathsheba](#)
 - [Uriah](#)
 - [David](#)
-

17:13

After Uriah died in the war, David married Bathsheba. Later, she gave birth to David's son. God was very angry about **what David had done, so he sent** the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

After Uriah died

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause. Uriah died, and then David married Bathsheba. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

what David had done

This refers to David's adultery with Bathsheba and his murder of her husband, Uriah.

so he sent

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God was very angry with David), with the result (God sent a prophet to tell David that he had done an evil thing). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Uriah](#)
 - [David](#)
 - [Bathsheba](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Nathan](#)
 - [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [repent, repentance](#)
 - [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
-

17:14

But David's baby boy died. This is how God punished David. Also, until David died, **some members of his own family rebelled against him**, and David lost much power. **But God was faithful** and still did what he had promised David he would do for him, even though David had disobeyed him. **Later**, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.

But David's baby boy died

The connecting word **But** contrasts David's repentance and God's forgiveness with God's punishment of David and Bathsheba's baby dying. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

some members of his own family rebelled against him

This fighting was very serious. Among other things, one of his sons murdered another son and tried to take David's place as king while David was still reigning. If possible, use a word that conveys the intensity of this conflict within the family.

But God was faithful

The connecting word **But** contrasts David's sin and unfaithfulness with God's faithfulness. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Later

This introduces the birth of a second son who did not die. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: 1 Samuel 10; 15-19; 24; 31; 2 Samuel 5; 7; 11-12

Translation Words

- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [David](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [promise, promised](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)

18. The Divided Kingdom

18:00

The Divided Kingdom

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when the Israelites divided against each other" or "What happened when the Israelites divided against each other?"

Divided Kingdom

This refer to when the twelve tribes of Israel divided into the northern kingdom of Israel and the southern kingdom of Judah after the death of Solomon.

18:01

King David ruled for 40 years. Then he died, and his son Solomon began to rule over Israel. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most that God should do for him. Solomon asked that God would make him very wise. This pleased God, **so he made Solomon the wisest man in the world**. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise ruler. God also made him very wealthy.

King David ruled for 40 years

This is background information about what happened while David was king, before he died and his son Solomon became king after him. (See: [Background Information](#))

Then he died

This begins the transition from David's reign as king to Solomon's reign. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

so he made Solomon the wisest man in the world

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (God was pleased with Solomon asking him to make him wise), and the result (God made him the wisest man in the world). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [David](#)
 - [Solomon](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [wise, wisdom](#)
 - [judge, judgment](#)
-

18:02

In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father, David, had planned and gathered materials. People now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple instead of at the Tent of Meeting. God came and **was present in the Temple**, and he lived there **with his people**.

was present in the Temple

This could mean 'was present in the Temple in a special way.' Even though God was also present everywhere else at the same time, he made himself especially available to the people at the Temple.

with his people

This could be translated as: "in the midst of his people" or "among his people."

Translation Words

- Jerusalem
 - Solomon
 - temple
 - David
 - prostrate, worship
 - God
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - tent of meeting
-

18:03

But Solomon loved women from other countries. He disobeyed God by marrying many women, almost **1,000** of them! Many of these women came from foreign countries and **brought their gods with them** and continued to worship them. **When Solomon was old**, he also worshiped their gods.

But Solomon loved women from other countries

The connecting word **But** contrasts Solomon building the Temple, God's dwelling place, with Solomon loving women from other religions. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

1,000

This could also be written in words: "one thousand." (See: [Numbers](#))

brought their gods with them

They brought their idols and their methods of worshiping idols with them to Israel.

When Solomon was old

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause that indicates Solomon became old at the beginning of the time when he worshiped foreign gods. (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- Solomon
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - God
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - prostrate, worship
-

18:04

God was angry with Solomon **because of this**. He said that he would punish him by dividing the nation of Israel into two kingdoms. He would do this after Solomon died.

because of this

The connecting words **because of this** connect the reason (Solomon worshiped other gods), with the result (God was angry with him and said he would divide the kingdom). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - Solomon
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - promise, promised
 - Israel, Israelites
 - kingdom
-

18:05

After Solomon died, his son Rehoboam became king. All the people of the nation of Israel came together **to accept him as their king**. They complained to Rehoboam that Solomon had made them do a lot of hard work and pay a lot of taxes. They asked Rehoboam to make them work less.

After Solomon died

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause that indicates Solomon died and then Rehoboam became king. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

to accept him as their king

This could mean 'tell him that they were glad he was king and that they would do what he said.'

their king

This refers to a social relationship. Their king is the man who rules the country where they live. (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words

- [Solomon](#)
 - [Rehoboam](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
-

18:06

But Rehoboam answered them in a very foolish way. He said, “You say that my father, Solomon, made you work hard. But I will make you work harder than he did, and I will make you suffer worse than he did.”

But Rehoboam answered them in a very foolish way

The connecting word **But** contrasts the people’s request for a wise and gracious response with Rehoboam’s unwise and harsh response. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

answered them in a very foolish way

Rehoboam’s answer was harsh, and caused the people to turn against him.

He said, “You say that my father, Solomon, made you work hard. But I will make you work harder than he did, and I will make you suffer worse than he did.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He told them that his father Solomon made them work hard, but that he would make them work harder than his father did, and would make them suffer worse than he did.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

you

Here **you** is plural, referring not just to the people present, but all the people in the nation. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words

- [Rehoboam](#)
 - [Solomon](#)
 - [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
-

18:07

When the people heard him say this, most of them **rebelled against him**. Ten **tribes** left him; only two tribes **remained with him**. These two tribes called themselves **the kingdom of Judah**.

tribes

The descendants of each of Jacob's 12 sons had become a **tribe** or very large family group in the nation of Israel. Everyone in Israel belonged to one of the 12 tribes.

rebelled against him

This could mean 'refused to follow Rehoboam as their king.' It might help to start this sentence with 'So' or 'Because of that' or 'Because of what Rehoboam said.'

remained with him

This could mean 'stayed loyal to him' or 'continued to support him as king.'

the kingdom of Judah

This is not possession, but it gives the name of the kingdom. It could be translated as: "the Judah kingdom." (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
 - Rehoboam
 - faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - Judah, kingdom of Judah
-

18:08

The other ten tribes made a man named Jeroboam to be their king. These tribes were in the northern part of the land. They called themselves **the kingdom of Israel**.

the kingdom of Israel

This is not possession, but it gives the name of the kingdom. It could be translated as: "the Israel kingdom." (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - Rehoboam
 - Jeroboam
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - kingdom
 - kingdom of Israel
-

18:09

Jeroboam rebelled against God and **caused the people to sin**. He built two idols for his people to worship. They no longer went to Jerusalem in the kingdom of Judah to worship God at the Temple.

caused the people to sin

This could be translated as: "led the people to sin" or "motivated the people to sin." Rehoboam led the people into sin by making idols for them to worship.

Translation Words

- Jeroboam
 - rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
 - God
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - prostrate, worship
 - temple
 - Judah, kingdom of Judah
-

18:10

The kingdoms of **Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.

Judah and Israel

The people of Judah and Israel were all descendants of Jacob and part of God's people. Even so, they disobeyed God and fought and killed each other.

Translation Words

- kingdom
 - Judah, kingdom of Judah
 - kingdom of Israel
-

18:11

In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil. Many of these kings were killed by other Israelites who wanted to become king in their place.

18:12

All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols. **When they did this**, they often slept with prostitutes and sometimes even sacrificed children to the idols.

When they did this

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause which indicates that at the same time the people of the kingdom of Israel started worshiping idols, they also started sleeping with prostitutes and sacrificing children to idols. (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- king, kingdom, kingship
 - kingdom of Israel
 - prostrate, worship
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
-

18:13

The kings of Judah were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who **ruled justly** and worshiped God. **But most of Judah's kings were evil**. They ruled badly, and they worshiped idols. Some of these kings even sacrificed their children to false gods. Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.

ruled justly

This means they ruled according to God's laws. This can be translated as: "when they ruled, they did what was right."

But most of Judah's kings were evil

The connecting word **But** contrasts the few godly kings with the most kings of Judah who were evil. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: 1 Kings 1-6; 11-12

Translation Words

- king, kingdom, kingship
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- descend, descendant
- David
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

- prostrate, worship
- God
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

19. The Prophets

19:00

The Prophets

This title can also be translated as: "About the work the prophets did for God" or "How did the prophets work for God?"

19:01

God was always sending prophets to the Israelites. The prophets heard messages from God and then told them to the people.

God was always sending prophets to the Israelites

This introduces the prophets of God as new characters. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Israelites

Here, this could be translated as: "the kingdoms of Israel and Judah." All of the descendants of Jacob, including those in the kingdom of Judah, continued to be called **Israelites**.

The prophets heard messages from God and then told them to the people.

This is background information about what the prophets did. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-

19:02

Elijah was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel. Ahab was an evil man. He tried to make the people worship a false god named Baal. **So Elijah told King Ahab that God was going to punish the people. He said to him, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say it will rain again." This made Ahab so angry** that he decided to kill Elijah.

So Elijah told King Ahab that God was going to punish the people

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (Ahab tried to make the people worship Baal), with the result (God was going to punish the people). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

He said to him, “There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say it will rain again.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He told him that there would be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until he said it would rain again.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

until I say it will rain again

This may be translated as: “until I command the rain and dew to come again.”

This made Ahab so angry

This could be translated as: “When Ahab heard what Elijah said, he became so angry.”

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Ahab](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [kingdom of Israel](#)
 - [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
 - [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
 - [Baal](#)
-

19:03

So God told Elijah to go into **the wilderness** to hide from Ahab. Elijah went into the wilderness to a certain stream where God directed him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring Elijah bread and meat. **During this time**, Ahab and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.

the wilderness

This was a remote location with very few people. This may also be translated as: “desert” or “the bush.”

During this time

The connecting words **During this time** introduce a simultaneous clause. At the same time as Elijah was hiding in the wilderness, Ahab and his army were looking for him but could not find him. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Elijah](#)
 - [Ahab](#)
-

19:04

Because there was no rain, after some time the stream dried up. So Elijah went to **another country close by**. In that country lived a poor widow and her son. They had almost run out of food **because there was no harvest. But still**, as the woman **took care of Elijah, God provided for her and her son. Her jar of flour and her bottle of oil never became empty**. They had food during the whole famine. Elijah stayed there for about three years.

another country close by

This refers to a country that was beside, or shared a border with, Israel.

because there was no harvest

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (there was no harvest), with the result (they had almost run out of food). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

But still

The connecting words **But still** introduce a contrast relationship. You would expect the widow to refuse to help Elijah because she was almost out of food, but she did the unexpected and took care of him. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

took care of

This means they gave him a place to stay in their house and provided food for him. It does not mean he was sick.

God provided for her and her son. Her jar of flour and her bottle of oil never became empty

This could be translated as: "God prevented their flour jar and their bottle of oil from becoming empty" or "God caused their flour jar and their bottle of oil to never become empty."

jar of flour

This refers to a clay jar in which the widow kept her supply of flour.

bottle of oil

In Israel, olive oil is used for cooking. This could be translated as: "bottle of cooking oil." The widow used the flour and the oil for making bread.

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [God](#)
-

19:05

After three and a half years, God told Elijah that he would make it rain again. He told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab. So Elijah went to Ahab. When Ahab saw

him, he said, **“There you are, you troublemaker!”** Elijah replied to him, **“It is you who are the troublemaker! You have abandoned Yahweh.** He is the true God, but you are worshiping Baal. **Now you must bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to Mount Carmel.”**

There you are, you troublemaker!

This is a strong statement that expresses that Ahab was very angry with Elijah. (See: [Exclamations](#))

you troublemaker

This means: ‘You are a troublemaker!’ Ahab was accusing Elijah of causing trouble by telling the king that he was doing wrong and also by stopping the rain.

It is you who are the troublemaker!

This is a strong statement that Elijah uses to rebuke Ahab. (See: [Exclamations](#))

You have abandoned Yahweh

That is, Ahab had led Israel to stop worshiping and obeying Yahweh.

Now you must bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to Mount Carmel.

This is a command that Elijah gave to Ahab by his authority as a prophet of God.

all the people of the kingdom of Israel

This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Mount Carmel

Mount Carmel is the name of a mountain located in northern Israel. It is over 500 meters high.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Baal](#)

19:06

So **all the people of Israel** went to **Mount Carmel**. The men who said they spoke messages for Baal also came. These were **Baal’s prophets**. There were **450** of them. Elijah said to the people, **“How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!”**

all the people of Israel

Not every person in the land of Israel came to Mount Carmel. This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Mount Carmel

See how you translated this in [19:05](#).

Baal's prophets

This refers to the prophets that served the god Baal. (See: [Possession](#))

450

This could also be written in words: "four hundred and fifty." (See: [Numbers](#))

How long will you keep changing your mind?

This is not a real question asking for information. Elijah was rebuking the Israelites for repeatedly changing their minds about whether they would serve Yahweh or Baal. Some languages will have to express this as a statement such as "Stop changing your minds about whom you will worship!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!

This is a strong statement that the people should decide once for all who they would worship. This does not mean that Elijah was undecided. He knew that Yahweh is the real God. He wanted the people to understand that when they worship false gods, they are rejecting Yahweh as the only true God. Translate this in a way that shows that the people had to make a choice. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Baal](#)
 - [Elijah](#)
 - [Yahweh](#)
 - [God](#)
-

19:07

Then Elijah said to Baal's prophets, "**Kill a bull, divide the meat into pieces, and put it on an altar for a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.** I will do the same later, and I will put the meat on a different altar. Then **if God sends fire on the altar**, you will know that he is **the real God.**" **So the prophets of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.**

Kill a bull, divide the meat into pieces, and put it on an altar for a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.

Elijah commanded exactly how the prophets of Baal should prepare their sacrifice in order to test and see if Baal was a real god.

if God sends fire on the altar

The connecting word **If** indicates a hypothetical conditional relationship. If God sends fire, then it proves that he is real. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

the real God

This means the one and only true God.

So the prophets of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the prophets of Baal made the sacrifice but didn't light a fire), with the reason (Elijah told them to do it that way). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Baal](#)
 - [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [priest, priesthood](#)
-

19:08

Then the prophets of Baal **prayed to Baal, "Hear us, Baal!"** All day long they prayed and **shouted** and even **cut themselves with knives, but Baal did not answer, and he did not send any fire.**

prayed to Baal

The prophets of Baal asked Baal to send fire onto the bull they prepared as a sacrifice.

Hear us, Baal!

This is both a command and a strong plea for Baal to answer their request and to send fire on the sacrifice. (See: [Exclamations](#))

shouted

They yelled or called out loudly to Baal.

cut themselves with knives

They injured themselves with knives as an extreme way to show their devotion to Baal, hoping that this would persuade him to listen to them.

but Baal did not answer, and he did not send any fire.

The connecting word **but** contrasts Baal's not answering or sending fire with the prophets praying, shouting, and cutting themselves. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Baal
 - pray, prayer
-

19:09

Baal's prophets spent almost the whole day praying to Baal. They finally stopped praying. Then Elijah put the meat of another bull on an altar for God. **After that**, he told the people to pour 12 huge pots of water on top of the sacrifice until the meat, the wood, and even the ground around the altar were completely wet.

After that

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. Elijah prepared the sacrifice, and then had people pour 12 pots of water over it. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Elijah
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - altar
-

19:10

Then Elijah prayed, "Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, **show us** today that you are the God of Israel and that **I am your servant. Answer me** so that **these people will know** that you are the true God."

show us

This could mean 'prove to us' or 'demonstrate to us.'

I am your servant

This could be translated as: "You have given me authority to serve you and do these things."

Answer me

This could mean 'respond to my prayer' or 'send the fire that I have asked you for.'

these people will know

This may be translated as: "these people will see and understand."

Translation Words

- Elijah
 - pray, prayer
 - Yahweh
 - God
 - Abraham, Abram
 - Isaac
 - Israel, Israelite, Jacob
 - Israel, Israelites
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - true, truth
-

19:11

Immediately, fire **fell from the sky**. It burned up the meat, the wood, the rocks, the soil, and even the water that was around the altar. When the people saw this, they prostrated themselves to the ground and said, "**Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!**"

Immediately

The connecting word **Immediately** emphasizes that the fire fell from the sky as soon as Elijah prayed. In contrast, the prayers of the prophets of Baal were still not answered after hours of praying. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

fell from the sky

This may be translated as: "suddenly came down from the sky."

Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!

This statement is repeated to emphasize that it is indeed true! (See: [Exclamations](#))

Yahweh is God

This expression means that they understood that Yahweh is the only God, not just one god among others.

Translation Words

- altar
 - Yahweh
 - God
-

19:12

Then Elijah said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!" So the people **captured** the prophets of Baal and took them away from there and killed them.

Then Elijah said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then Elijah told them not to let any of the prophets of Baal escape!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!

This is both a command and also a strong statement to emphasize that the people must seize every one of the prophets of Baal. (See: [Exclamations](#))

escape

The prophets of Baal tried to run away after their god was proven to be a false god.

captured

This could mean 'seized and held onto' or 'took hold of.'

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Baal](#)
-

19:13

Then Elijah said to King Ahab, "Return immediately to your home, because the rain is coming." Soon **the sky became black**, and a heavy rain began. Yahweh was ending **the drought**. This also showed that he is the true God.

Then Elijah said to King Ahab, "Return immediately to your home, because the rain is coming."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Then Elijah told King Ahab to return immediately to his home, because the rain was coming." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Then Elijah said to King Ahab

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The prophets of Baal were killed, and then Elijah warned Ahab. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Return immediately to your home

Elijah is giving a command to King Ahab on his authority as a prophet of God.

the sky became black

This could mean 'the sky became very dark.' Heavy rainclouds covered the sky, making it look dark grey or black.

the drought

This could mean 'the long dry time with no rain.'

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Ahab](#)
 - [Yahweh](#)
 - [God](#)
-

19:14

When Elijah finished his work, God chose a man named Elisha to be his prophet. God did many miracles through Elisha. One of the miracles happened to Naaman. He was **the commander of an enemy army, but he had a bad skin disease. Naaman heard about Elisha, so he went to Elisha and asked him** to heal him. Elisha told Naaman to go the Jordan River and dip himself in the water seven times.

When Elijah finished his work, God chose a man named Elisha to be his prophet

This sentence introduces Elisha as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

the commander of an enemy army

Naaman was a commander in the army of one of the countries that was Israel's enemy.

but he had a bad skin disease

The connecting word **but** contrasts Naaman's prestigious position of army commander, with his having this terrible disease. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Naaman heard about Elisha

This means that people had told Naaman that Elisha was able to perform miracles. Here Elisha is used to represent the miracles that God gave Elisha the power to perform. (See: [Metonymy](#))

he went to Elisha and asked him

This could mean 'he went to see Elisha and asked him.' Naaman had to go into Israel to find Elisha and ask him to do this.

Translation Words

- [Elijah](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
 - [Naaman](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
 - [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
-

19:15

Naaman became angry. **He refused to do this because it seemed foolish.** But later **he changed his mind.** He went to the Jordan River and dipped himself seven times into the water. **When he came up from the water the last time,** God healed him.

He refused to do this because it seemed foolish

Naaman would not do what Elisha said because he knew that washing alone could not heal his disease.

because it seemed foolish

The connecting word **because** connects the reason for his anger (it seemed foolish), with the result (Naaman refused to obey). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

he changed his mind

This could mean 'he decided to do what Elisha had told him to do.'

When he came up from the water the last time

The connecting clause **When he came up from the water the last time** introduces a sequential clause. Naaman dipped himself seven times, and then God healed him. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Naaman](#)
 - [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
 - [God](#)
-

19:16

God also sent many other prophets to the people of Israel. They all told the people to stop worshipping idols. Instead, people should act justly with each other and have mercy on each other. The prophets warned the people that they must stop doing evil and obey God instead. **If the people did not do this,** then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.

If the people did not do this

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical condition. The result depended on Israel's response to the warning of the prophets. God said that, if they did not stop doing evil, he would punish them. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)

- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
 - mercy, merciful
 - evil, wicked, unpleasant
 - obey, obedient
 - judge, judgment
 - guilt, guilty
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
-

19:17

Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them. **Once, they put the prophet Jeremiah into a dry well** and left him there to die. He sank down into the mud in the bottom of the well. **But then the king had mercy on him** and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.

Once, they put the prophet Jeremiah into a dry well

This begins a new event about Jeremiah being held captive in a well. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a dry well

The well did not currently have any water in it, but it did still have mud in the bottom. This could be translated as: "an empty well."

But then the king had mercy on him

The connecting word **But** contrasts the people putting Jeremiah in the well to die, and the king having mercy on him and ordering him brought out. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

had mercy on him

This means he was kind to Jeremiah and helped him.

Translation Words

- obey, obedient
 - God
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Jeremiah
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - mercy, merciful
-

19:18

The prophets **continued to speak for God even though the people hated them**. They warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent. They also reminded people that God promised to send them the Messiah.

continued to speak for God

This could mean 'continued to tell the people what God wanted to tell them.'

even though the people hated them

The connecting words **even though** contrast the prophets speaking for God with the people hating them for their obedience. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: 1 Kings 16-18; 2 Kings 5; Jeremiah 38

Translation Words

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [God](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)
- [promise, promised](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)

20. The Exile and Return

20:00

The Exile and Return

This title can also be translated as: "About how the Israelites went away as prisoners and how they returned" or "How did God send the Israelites away as prisoners and bring them back again?"

The Exile

The word **exile** means someone is removed from their country by force. The **Exile** is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

Return

This refers to when the Jews returned to the land of Israel after being captives in Babylon for 70 years.

20:01

The kingdom of Israel and the kingdom of Judah both sinned against God. They **broke the covenant** that God had made with them at Sinai. God sent his prophets to **warn them to repent and worship him again, but they refused to obey.**

broke the covenant

This could mean 'disobeyed the commands God had given them in his covenant with them at Mount Sinai.'

warn them to repent and worship him again

Another way to translate this would be: "tell them to stop sinning and to worship Yahweh instead of other gods, or terrible things would happen to them."

but they refused to obey

The connecting word **but** contrasts the people refusing to obey God, with God sending them prophets to warn them to repent and worship him. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- covenant
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- repent, repentance
- prostrate, worship
- obey, obedient

20:02

So God punished **both kingdoms** by allowing their enemies to destroy them. **Assyria was another nation that became very powerful.** The Assyrians were also very cruel to other nations. They came and destroyed the kingdom of Israel. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, **took away** everything they wanted, and burned much of the country.

both kingdoms

This refers to both the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.

Assyria was another nation that became very powerful

This introduces the Assyrians, from the nation of Assyria, as new characters in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

took away

This could mean 'stole.' They stole these valuable things and carried them back to Assyria.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
 - [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
 - [kingdom of Israel](#)
-

20:03

The Assyrians gathered together all the leaders, the rich people, and **the people who could make valuable things.** They took them to Assyria. Only some very poor Israelites **remained** in Israel.

the people who could make valuable things

This refers to people who were good at woodworking, metalworking, and building.

remained

This could mean 'stayed' or 'were left behind' or 'were allowed to stay behind.'

Translation Words

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [kingdom of Israel](#)
-

20:04

Then the Assyrians brought **foreigners** to live in the land. The foreigners rebuilt the cities. They intermarried with the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of these people were called Samaritans.

foreigners

This refers to people who were not Israelites.

Translation Words

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
 - kingdom of Israel
 - Israel, Israelites
 - descend, descendant
 - Samaria, Samaritan
-

20:05

The people in the kingdom of Judah saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel **for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols**, including the gods of the Canaanites. God sent prophets to **warn them, but they refused to listen.**

for not believing and obeying him

Another way to translate this would be: "because they did not believe or obey him."

But they still worshiped idols,

The connecting word **But** contrasts the people continuing to worship idols despite seeing Israel's punishment when they refused to obey. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

warn them

This could mean 'tell them to stop sinning or terrible things would happen to them.'

but they refused to listen

The connecting word **but** contrasts the people refusing to listen, with God sending prophets to warn them. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

they refused to listen

This could mean 'they refused to obey' or 'they refused to stop their evil behavior.'

Translation Words

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- God

- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - kingdom of Israel
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - obey, obedient
 - prostrate, worship
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
 - Canaan, Canaanite
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
-

20:06

About **100** years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, **God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful nation. The king of Judah **agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar's servant** and pay him a lot of money every year.

100

This could also be written in words: "one hundred." (See: [Numbers](#))

God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians

This introduces the Babylonians and their king, Nebuchadnezzar, as new characters in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

agreed to be

The king of Judah was forced to either serve the Babylonian king or be destroyed.

to be Nebuchadnezzar's servant

This could be translated as: "to govern Judah under Nebuchadnezzar's command."

Translation Words

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
 - kingdom of Israel
 - God
 - Nebuchadnezzar
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
 - Judah, kingdom of Judah
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

20:07

But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. **So, the Babylonians came back and attacked** the kingdom of Judah. They **captured the city** of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and **took away** all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

So, the Babylonians came back and attacked

The connecting word **So** connects the result (the Babylonians came back and attacked), with the reason (the king of Judah rebelled). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

came back

This may also be translated as: “returned” or “came to Judah again.”

captured the city

This could mean ‘took control of the city and the people there.’

took away

They carried the treasures with them back to Babylon.

Translation Words

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
 - [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)
 - [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [temple](#)
-

20:08

To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar’s soldiers killed the king’s sons **in front of him** and then **made him blind**. **After that, they took the king away** so he would die in prison in Babylon.

To punish

Nebuchadnezzar punished the king of Judah by telling his soldiers to do these things.

in front of him

This may be translated as: “where he could see,” or “so that he could see it,” or “before his eyes.”

made him blind

This may also be translated as: “destroyed his eyes.”

After that, they took the king away

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. They killed the king's sons and blinded him in Judah, and then took him to a prison in Babylon. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
 - [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
 - [son](#)
 - [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
-

20:09

Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, **leaving only the poorest people behind** to plant the fields. **This period of time** when God's people were forced to leave the Promised Land is called **the Exile**.

leaving only the poorest people behind

This could mean 'leaving only the poorest people in Judah' or 'letting only the poorest people stay in Judah.'

This period of time

To translate this, choose a phrase that can refer to a long time, since this exile period lasted 70 years.

the Exile

The word **exile** means someone is removed from their country by force. The **Exile** is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

Translation Words

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
 - [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
 - [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
-

20:10

Even though God punished his people for their sin by taking them away into **exile**, he **did not forget** them or his promises. God continued to **watch over** his people and **speak to them through his prophets**. He promised that, after 70 years, they would return to the Promised Land again.

Even though God punished his people for their sin

The connecting words **Even though** contrast God sending the people into exile with him not forgetting his promises to them. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

exile

See how you translated this term in [20:09](#).

did not forget

This could be translated as: “did not ignore” or “did not neglect.” Or the whole phrase could be translated as: “continued to honor his commitment to his people and his promises.”

watch over

This could mean ‘take care of.’

speak to them through his prophets

This could be translated as: “tell his prophets messages that he wanted them to tell his people.”

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Promised Land](#)
-

20:11

About 70 years later, Cyrus, the king of Persia, defeated Babylonia. So, instead of the Babylonian Empire, **the Persian Empire** now ruled over many nations. **The Israelites were now called Jews**. Most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon. Only a few very old Jews even remembered **the land of Judah**.

About 70 years later

This begins a new event when Cyrus allowed the Jews to return to Israel from exile in Babylon. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

70 years later

This refers to the 70 years that had passed since the Babylonian army took the people of Jerusalem into exile.

Cyrus

Cyrus was also called ‘Cyrus the Great.’ The name **Cyrus** meant ‘like the sun’ in the Persian language. However, since Cyrus was an important historical person, it might be best to transliterate his name rather than translating the meaning.

the Persian Empire

The Persian Empire grew to cover the area from central Asia to Egypt. It was located in the region of what is Iran today.

The Israelites were now called Jews

This could also be translated as: "People now called the Israelites by the name 'Jews.'"

the land of Judah

That is, the area where the kingdom of Judah was located before the Exile. Jerusalem was the capital city of Judah.

Translation Words

- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
 - [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
-

20:12

The Persians were very strong, but they had mercy on the people they conquered. Shortly after **Cyrus** became king of the Persians, he gave an order that any Jew who wanted to return to **Judah** could leave Persia and **go back to Judah. He even gave them money to rebuild the Temple!** So, after **70 years in exile**, a small group of Jews **returned** to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.

Cyrus

See how you translated his name in [20:11](#).

Judah

See the note about Judah in [20:11](#).

go back to Judah

Since most of these Jews were the children and grandchildren of those who left Judah, they had never lived in Judah before. In some languages, it might be better to say "to go to Judah."

He even gave them money to rebuild the Temple!

This sentence emphasizes the surprising fact that King Cyrus of the Persians would give the Jews money to rebuild their Temple. (See: [Exclamations](#))

70 years

This could also be written in words: "seventy years." (See: [Numbers](#))

exile

See how you translated this term in [20:09](#).

returned

This could mean 'went back.' Some languages may prefer to say, 'went' since most of these people had never been to Jerusalem.

Translation Words

- [mercy, merciful](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
 - [temple](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
-

20:13

When **the people** arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and **the wall** around the city. The Persians still ruled over them, but **once again** the Jews were living in the Promised Land and **worshipping at the Temple**.

the people

That is, the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob, who were now called the Jews.

the wall

This wall was very thick (2.5 meters) and was built to protect the city from attackers.

once again

In some languages this might need to be translated as: "now" or "as their ancestors had done" or "just as before the Exile."

worshipping at the Temple

They worshiped Yahweh, the One True God, at the Temple they rebuilt.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: 2 Kings 17; 24-25; 2 Chronicles 36; Ezra 1-10; Nehemiah 1-13

Translation Words

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Promised Land](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)

21. God Promises the Messiah

21:00

God Promises the Messiah

This title can also be translated as: "About how God promised to send the Messiah" or "What happened when God promised to send the Messiah?"

21:01

Even when God created the world, he knew that he would send the Messiah at some time far later. He promised Adam and Eve that he would do this. He said that a descendant of Eve would be born who would **crush the snake's head**. Of course, **Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve**. God meant that the Messiah would defeat Satan completely.

Even when God created the world

The connecting words **Even when** contrast God creating a perfect world without sin, with his preexisting plan to send a Messiah to save people from sin. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

crush the snake's head

Unless the head of a venomous snake is crushed, the snake can still hurt someone. Use a word for **crush** that communicates that its head is destroyed.

Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve

Satan spoke to Eve in the form of a snake. This does not mean that he is a snake now. This could be translated as: "The snake who deceived Eve was an appearance of Satan."

to deceive Eve

This could mean 'to lie to Eve.' The snake lied by making Eve doubt what God had said and tricking her into disobeying God.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [Adam](#)
 - [Eve](#)
 - [descend, descendant](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
-

21:02

God promised Abraham that **through him** all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. God would fulfill this promise by sending the Messiah at some later time. The Messiah would save people from their sin out of every people group in the world.

through him

This could mean 'because of one of his descendants.'

Translation Words

- God
 - Abraham, Abram
 - people, people group,
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
 - Christ, Messiah
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
-

21:03

God promised Moses that in the future he would send another **prophet like Moses**. This prophet would be the Messiah. In this way, God promised again that he would send the Messiah.

prophet like Moses

To be like Moses, the future prophet would need to have great authority from God to lead and rescue his people.

Translation Words

- God
 - promise, promised
 - Moses
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
-

21:04

God promised King David that one of **his own descendants** would be the Messiah. He would be king and rule over God's people forever.

his own descendants

Another way to say this would be: "a direct descendant of David himself."

Translation Words

- God
 - promise, promised
 - David
 - Christ, Messiah
 - descend, descendant
-

21:05

God spoke to the prophet Jeremiah and told him that he would make a New Covenant one day. The New Covenant **would not be like** the old covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. When he would make his New Covenant with people, he would make them to know him personally. Each person would love him and want to obey his laws. God said **this would be like writing his law on their hearts**. They would **be his people**, and God would forgive their sins. It is the Messiah who would make the New Covenant with them.

would not be like

The New Covenant would be truly effective. People really would know God, they would truly live as his people, and He would forgive their sins completely, based on the Messiah's sacrifice of himself one time for all who believe in him.

this would be like writing his law on their hearts

Yahweh's law will become a part of them, rather than merely being written on stone. Here **heart** represents 'emotions' or 'mind.' Alternate translation: "My law will be part of their thoughts and emotions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

writing his law on their hearts

This is a metaphor meaning: 'help his people to understand his laws and to earnestly desire to obey them.' If possible, keep the image of writing on their hearts, since this is in contrast with the way God had written his law on stone tablets for the Israelites. If that is not possible, you could just translate the meaning. (See: [Metaphor](#))

be his people

This could be translated as: "be his special people" or "be his favored people."

Translation Words

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Jeremiah
 - God
 - promise, promised
 - covenant
 - covenant
 - Israel, Israelites
 - Sinai, Mount Sinai
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Christ, Messiah
-

21:06

God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king. A prophet is a person who hears the words of God and then proclaims God's messages to the people. The Messiah that God promised to send would be **the perfect prophet**. That is, the Messiah would hear God's messages perfectly, he would understand them perfectly, and he would teach them to people perfectly.

the perfect prophet

The Messiah would be a prophet who would be perfect in obedience to God, giving every word God would speak to the people. He would present God perfectly to the people, helping them to know and understand God.

Translation Words

- God
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
 - priest, priesthood
 - king, kingdom, kingship
-

21:07

Israelite priests kept on making sacrifices to God for the people. These sacrifices were in place of God punishing the people for their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people. **However**, the Messiah would be **the perfect high priest** who would **offer himself** as **a perfect sacrifice** to God. That is, he would never sin, and when he would give himself to be the sacrifice, no other sacrifice for sin would ever be necessary.

However

The connecting word **However** contrasts the Israelite priests' performance, with the Messiah's performance as priest. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

the perfect high priest

Unlike the other high priests, the Messiah would never sin, and he would permanently take away all the sins of the people.

offer himself

This could mean 'allow himself to be killed.'

a perfect sacrifice

This could mean 'a sacrifice that has no fault or imperfection.'

Translation Words

- Israel, Israelites
 - priest, priesthood
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - pray, prayer
 - Christ, Messiah
 - high priest, chief priests
-

21:08

Kings and chiefs rule over groups of people, and sometimes they make mistakes. King David ruled over only the Israelites. **But the Messiah**, a descendant of David's, will rule over **the whole world**, and he will rule forever. Also, he will always rule justly and make the right decisions.

But the Messiah

The connecting word **But** contrasts the kingdom and performance of other kings, with the Messiah's kingdom and performance as king. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

the whole world

This could also be translated as: "everyone everywhere."

Translation Words

- king, kingdom, kingship
 - kingdom
 - judge, judgment
 - Christ, Messiah
 - David
-

21:09

God's prophets said many other things about the Messiah. For example, **Malachi** said that another prophet would come before the Messiah came. That prophet would be very important. Also, the prophet Isaiah wrote that **the Messiah would be born of a virgin**. And the prophet **Micah** said that the Messiah would be born in the town of Bethlehem.

Malachi

Malachi was the last prophet in the Old Testament.

the Messiah would be born of a virgin

Another way to say this would be: “a virgin would give birth to the Messiah.”

virgin

Some ancient versions and some contemporary versions translate: “the virgin will conceive,” while others translate: “the young woman will conceive.” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Micah

Micah was an Old Testament prophet of God who, like Isaiah, spoke his messages from God almost 800 years before the Messiah came.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [virgin, virginity](#)
 - [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
-

21:10

The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in the region of Galilee. The Messiah would comfort people who were very sad. He would also **set prisoners free**. The Messiah would also heal sick people and those who **could not hear, see, speak, or walk**.

set prisoners free

This could mean ‘set free those who have unjustly been put into prison.’ This could also refer to setting people free from the bondage of sin.

could not hear, see, speak, or walk

It may be better to say: “could not hear, could not see, could not speak, or could not walk.” Some languages have special words for these conditions, such as ‘deaf’ and ‘blind.’

Translation Words

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
 - [Galilee, Galilean](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
-

21:11

The prophet Isaiah also said that people would hate the Messiah and refuse to accept him. Other prophets said that a friend of the Messiah would turn against him. The prophet **Zechariah** said that this friend would receive **30 silver coins** from other people for doing this. Also, some prophets said that people would kill the Messiah, and that they would **gamble for his clothes**.

Zechariah

Zechariah was an Old Testament prophet who spoke to God's people after they returned to the Promised Land from the Exile in Babylon. This was about 500 years before the Messiah came.

30 silver coins

At the time, each of these coins was worth the amount of money a person could earn in four days.

gamble for his clothes

This could mean 'play a game of chance to determine who would win his clothes.' (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [betray, betrayer](#)
-

21:12

The prophets also told about how the Messiah would die. Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah. They would **pierce** him, and he would die in great suffering and agony **even though he had not done anything wrong**.

pierce

People would stab the Messiah with a sharp weapon.

even though he had not done anything wrong

The connecting words **even though** contrast the way the Messiah was killed, with his innocence. It is not expected that an innocent, sinless man would be killed so brutally. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
-

21:13

The prophets also said that the Messiah would not sin. He would be perfect. **But he would die** because God would punish him for other people's sins. When he died, people would be able to have peace with God. This is why, in God's plan, the Messiah had to die.

But he would die

The connecting word **But** contrasts the perfection of the Messiah, with his death as punishment for other people's sins. It is not expected that a perfect man would die for other people's sin. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - peace, peaceful, peacemakers
 - God
-

21:14

The prophets also said that God would **raise the Messiah from the dead**. This shows that Jesus' death and resurrection was all God's plan **to make the New Covenant**, so he could save people who had sinned against him.

raise the Messiah from the dead

This could mean 'cause the Messiah to be alive again.'

to make the New Covenant

This could mean 'to put the New Covenant into effect.'

Translation Words

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - God
 - raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
 - resurrection
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - covenant
-

21:15

God revealed to the prophets many things about the Messiah, **but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets. More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, at exactly the right time**, God sent the Messiah **into the world**.

but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets

The connecting word **But** contrasts the many prophecies about the Messiah given to the prophets with the Messiah not coming during their life time. It is not expected that so much detail would be given when it would be another 400 years until the Messiah came. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, at exactly the right time

This is background information about what happened before the Messiah came. (See: [Background Information](#))

400 years

This could also be written in words: "four hundred years." (See: [Numbers](#))

into the world

This could be translated as: "to the people of the world." The Messiah would be sent not only to the Jews, but to all people.

A Bible story from: Genesis 3; 12; Deuteronomy 18:15; 2 Samuel 7; Psalm 16; 22; 35; 69; 41; Isaiah 7:14; 9:1-7; 61; 53; 50:6; 59:16; Jeremiah 31; Daniel 7; Micah 5:2; Zechariah 11:12-13; Malachi 4:5

Translation Words

- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)

22. The Birth of John

22:00

The Birth of John

This title can also be translated as: "About how John the Baptist was born" or "What happened when John the Baptist was born?"

22:01

In the past, God had spoken to his prophets so they could speak to his people. Then came 400 years of silence in which he did not speak to men. Then God sent an angel to a priest named Zechariah. Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, honored God. They were very old, and she had never born any children.

In the past, God had spoken to his prophets so they could speak to his people. Then came 400 years of silence in which he did not speak to men.

This is background information about the prophets of God, and the 400 years that God did not send them. (See: [Background Information](#))

his people

This could be translated as: "his people, the Israelites" or "his people, the Jews." But only include the added information if it is not clearly understood who these people were.

Then came 400 years of silence

Other ways to say this are: "Then 400 years of silence passed" or "Then there were 400 years of silence." The last Old Testament prophet, Malachi, has prophesied 400 years before.

in which he did not speak to men

This could mean 'during which God did not give any messages to the prophets for his people.'

Then God sent an angel

This introduces the birth of John the Baptist as a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Then God sent an angel to a priest named Zechariah

This introduces the angel and Zechariah as new characters in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, honored God. They were very old, and she had never born any children.

This is background information about the kind of people who Zechariah and Elizabeth were. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - angel, archangel
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - priest, priesthood
 - Zechariah (NT)
-

22:02

The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. **You will name him John.** God will **fill him with the Holy Spirit**, and John will get the people ready to accept the Messiah!” Zechariah responded, “**My wife and I are too old to have children! How can I know you are telling me the truth?**”

The angel

This refers to the angel that came to Zechariah in [22:01](#).

You will name him John.

This is a command. The angel is telling Zechariah exactly what he must name John.

fill him with the Holy Spirit

This could mean ‘give him wisdom and power through the Holy Spirit.’

My wife and I are too old to have children!

This sentence emphasizes that Zechariah and Elizabeth were far too old to have children by natural means. That would require God to work a miracle. (See: [Exclamations](#))

How can I know you are telling me the truth?

Here, **know** means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: “What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- angel, archangel
 - Zechariah (NT)
 - John (the Baptist)
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - Christ, Messiah
-

22:03

The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news. Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.”

Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak. Then the angel left Zechariah. After this, Zechariah returned home and his wife became pregnant.

The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news. Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel answered and told Zechariah that he was sent by God to bring him this good news. But because Zechariah did not believe him, Zechariah will not be able to speak until the child was born.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak

The connecting word **Immediately** introduces a sequential clause. First the angel said Zechariah would not be able to speak, and the next thing that happened was Zechariah could not speak. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (Zechariah did not believe the good news), with the result (Zechariah could not speak until the baby was born). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Zechariah \(NT\)](#)
-

22:04

When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel suddenly appeared to **Elizabeth’s relative**, whose name was Mary. **She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph**. The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus. He will be the **Son of the Most High God** and will rule forever.”

When Elizabeth was six months pregnant

The connecting word **When** introduces a background clause. The main event is Mary’s pregnancy and visit to Elizabeth. The background event that was already happening is Elizabeth was six months pregnant. (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

Elizabeth

She was Zechariah’s wife. An angel told Zechariah that Elizabeth would give birth to a son.

six months pregnant

Either she had already been pregnant for six months or she was in the sixth month of her pregnancy.

pregnant

Different languages have different idioms to talk about pregnancy, such as 'she was with child' or 'she had one in her body' or 'she had belly.' Some languages have special ways of speaking about it politely, such as 'she was expecting.' Use an expression that will not be embarrassing to readers.

Elizabeth's relative

Many translations say, 'cousin' here but we don't know exactly how these two women were related. A general term like, 'kin' or 'cousin' could be used.

She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph

This is background information about Mary. (See: [Background Information](#))

was engaged

This could mean 'was promised.'

Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus. Mary will bear **a son** who will be called **the Son of the Most High**. Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
 - [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [virgin, virginity](#)
 - [Joseph \(NT\)](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
-

22:05

Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?" The angel explained, "The **Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you. So the baby will be holy**, and he will be the **Son of God.**" Mary believed what the angel said.

Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Mary asked him how this could be, since she was a virgin." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

How can this be

This could mean 'How can I become pregnant' Mary was not doubting the truth of the angel's words, but asking how it would happen.

Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you

These are two ways of saying the same thing: 'By the power of God, the Holy Spirit will miraculously cause you to become pregnant.' Make sure the translation of this sentence does not sound like there was any physical contact involved. This was a miracle.

Holy Spirit

This introduces the Holy Spirit as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

the baby will be holy

The word **holy** here means the baby will belong to God.

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [virgin, virginity](#)
 - [angel, archangel](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
 - [power, powerful, powerfully](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

22:06

Soon after this happened, Mary went and visited **Elizabeth**. As soon as Mary greeted her, Elizabeth's **baby jumped inside her**. The women rejoiced together about **what God had done for them**. After Mary visited Elizabeth for three months, Mary returned home.

Soon after this happened

The connecting word **Soon** introduces a sequential clause. The angel came to Mary and soon after Mary left to visit Elizabeth. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Elizabeth

See the note about Elizabeth on [22:04](#).

baby jumped inside her

The baby moved suddenly inside Elizabeth's womb in response to Mary's greeting to Elizabeth.

what God had done for them

This refers to the fact that both women were pregnant through God's supernatural intervention. Mary had conceived without a man, and Elizabeth had conceived with Zechariah after she was past the age of childbearing.

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
 - [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [God](#)
-

22:07

After this, **Elizabeth** gave birth to her baby boy. Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby John, as the angel had commanded. **Then God made Zechariah able to speak again.** Zechariah said, "**Praise God, because he has remembered to help his people!** You, my son, will be **the prophet of the Most High God.** You will tell the people how they can receive forgiveness for their sins!"

Elizabeth

See the note about Elizabeth on [22:04](#).

Then God made Zechariah able to speak again

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. After Zechariah and Elizabeth named their baby John, Zechariah was able to speak again. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Praise God, because he has remembered to help his people!

This sentence emphasizes that God is worthy of praise because of how he helped his people. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Praise God

This could mean 'We should all praise God.'

the prophet

This could mean 'the very important prophet.' John would be the prophet that the Old Testament prophets had predicted would come before the Messiah.

the Most High God

Other ways to say this are: "the God who is greater than everything" or "the God who rules over everything."

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Luke 1

Translation Words

- Zechariah (NT)
- John (the Baptist)
- angel, archangel
- God
- Zechariah (NT)
- praise, praised, praiseworthy
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

23. The Birth of Jesus

23:00

The Birth of Jesus

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus was born" or "What happened when Jesus was born?"

23:01

Mary was engaged to a righteous man named Joseph. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, **he knew it was not his baby. However, he did not want to shame Mary,** so he decided to have mercy on her and **to divorce her quietly.** But before he could do that, an angel came to him **in a dream** and spoke to him.

Mary was engaged to a righteous man named Joseph

Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: "The parents of Mary had promised her in marriage to a righteous man named Joseph" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

engaged

This could mean 'promised to be married.' (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

he knew it was not his baby

This could mean 'he knew that he was not the one who had caused her to be pregnant.'

However, he did not want to shame Mary

The connecting word **However** contrasts Mary being pregnant with what Joseph believed to be another man's child, with Joseph's desire not to shame Mary. You would expect Joseph to be angry and want to shame her but, instead, he responds with mercy. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

to shame Mary

This could mean 'to cause Mary to be publicly disgraced' or 'to embarrass Mary publicly.' Joseph was merciful to Mary even though it seemed like she was an adulteress.

to divorce her quietly

This could also be translated as: "to divorce her without telling others why," or "to divorce her without telling others about her pregnancy." Because Joseph was righteous, he wanted to resolve the situation in the best way possible, which in this culture would be to divorce her quietly.

divorce her

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. This is why a divorce was necessary rather than simply

breaking an engagement. For some languages, it may be better to say: "break their engagement." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in a dream

This could mean 'while he was asleep and dreaming.'

Translation Words

- [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
 - [Joseph \(NT\)](#)
 - [angel, archangel](#)
 - [dream](#)
-

23:02

The angel said, "Joseph, **do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby that is in her is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus** (which means 'Yahweh saves'), **because he will save the people from their sins.**"

do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife

This can also be translated as: "Stop thinking that you shouldn't marry Mary" or "Do not hesitate to have Mary as your wife."

The baby that is in her is from the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

is from the Holy Spirit

This could mean 'was conceived by a miracle of the Holy Spirit.'

She will give birth to a son

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Name him Jesus

This is a command from God telling Joseph exactly what to name the baby.

because he will save the people from their sins

The connecting word **because** connects the result (Joseph was to name the baby Jesus, which means God saves), with the reason (Jesus will save the people from their sins). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)

- Joseph (NT)
 - Mary, the mother of Jesus
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - son
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Yahweh
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

23:03

So Joseph married Mary and took her home as his wife, **but he did not sleep with her** until she had given birth.

So Joseph married Mary

The connecting word **So** connects the result (Joseph took Mary as his wife) with the reason (the angel told him the baby was not another man's child conceived in sin, but the Son of God conceived by the Holy Spirit). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

but he did not sleep with her

The connecting word **but** contrasts Joseph taking Mary to be his wife, with him not sleeping with her. It would be expected that a man would sleep with the woman he took as his wife, but Joseph did the unexpected. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

he did not sleep with her

He kept her a virgin until the birth of the baby. In order to be polite, a euphemism is used to say Joseph did not have sexual intercourse with Mary. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words

- Joseph (NT)
 - Mary, the mother of Jesus
-

23:04

When the time was near for Mary to give birth, she and Joseph made a long journey to the town of Bethlehem. **They had to go there because the Roman officials wanted to count all the people in the land of Israel. They wanted everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived. King David had been born in Bethlehem, and he was the ancestor of both Mary and Joseph.**

When the time was near for Mary to give birth

This could mean 'When it was near the end of Mary's pregnancy.'

They had to go there because the Roman officials wanted to count all the people in the land of Israel. They wanted everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived. King David had been born in Bethlehem, and he was the ancestor of both Mary and Joseph.

This is background information about why Joseph and Mary had to travel to Bethlehem. (See: [Background Information](#))

the Roman officials

Rome had conquered and ruled over Israel at this time.

to count all the people

This could mean 'to write their names on a list.' They probably did this so they could tax the people.

Translation Words

- [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [Rome, Roman](#)
 - [Joseph \(NT\)](#)
 - [Nazareth, Nazarene](#)
 - [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
 - [David](#)
-

23:05

Mary and Joseph went to Bethlehem, **but there was no place for them to stay** except for **where some animals were kept**. It was there that Mary gave birth to her baby. She laid him in **a feeding trough** since there was no bed for him. They named him Jesus.

but there was no place for them to stay

This is background information about why Jesus was born in a place where animals slept. (See: [Background Information](#))

no place for them to stay

This could mean 'no usual place for them to stay.' Because Bethlehem was so crowded at that time, the usual rooms for guests were already full of people.

where some animals were kept

This was a place for sheltering animals, not a place where people lived. Translate this with a term that would normally be used for a place where animals were kept.

a feeding trough

This could mean 'an animal feed box' or 'a wooden or stone box for feeding animals.' The box could have been filled with hay to provide a padded surface for the baby to lie on.

Translation Words

- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

23:06

That night, there were some shepherds in a nearby field **guarding their flocks**. Suddenly, a **shining angel** appeared to them, and **they were terrified**. **The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”**

guarding their flocks

A **flock** is a group of sheep. The shepherds were caring for their sheep, and protecting them from harm or theft.

a shining angel

This could also be translated as: “an angel surrounded by a bright light.” The shining light would have seemed even brighter in contrast to the darkness of the night.

they were terrified

The shepherds were very afraid when a supernatural angel appeared.

The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel told them not to be afraid, because he had some good news for them. The Messiah, the Master, had been born in Bethlehem!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Do not be afraid

This often means ‘stop being afraid.’ The angel spoke this command to the shepherds in order to comfort them. The shepherds were very afraid when they saw the angel, so he was telling them they did not need to be afraid. Alternate translation: “You do not need to be afraid”

The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!

This sentence emphasizes the exciting message that the Messiah—for whom the Israelites had so long been waiting—had finally come! (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- shepherd, chief shepherd
 - angel, archangel
 - Christ, Messiah
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - Bethlehem, Ephrathah
-

23:07

“Go search for the baby, and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.” Suddenly, the skies were **filled with angels**. They were praising God. They said, **“May all honor be to God** in heaven. May there be **peace on earth to the people he favors!**”

General Information

The angel continued speaking.

Go search for the baby, and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “The angel told them to go and search for the baby, and they would find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

and you will find him wrapped in pieces of cloth and lying in a feeding trough

The connecting word **and** introduces a sequential clause. After they go and search for the baby, they will find him wrapped in cloth and lying in a trough. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

wrapped in pieces of cloth

The custom of that time was to tightly wrap newborn babies in long strips of cloth. It may be necessary to say “wrapped in long strips of cloth, in the customary way.”

a feeding trough

This could mean ‘an animal feeding box.’ Also see how you translated this in [23:05](#).

filled with angels

This means that there were so many angels that they seemed to fill the sky.

May all honor be to God

This can also be translated as: “Let us all honor God!” or “Our God deserves all honor!” or “We all give honor to God!”

peace on earth

Another way to say this would be: “may there be peace on earth.”

the people he favors

This might be translated as: “people that God looks upon with favor, delight, or good will.”

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
 - peace, peaceful, peacemakers
-

23:08

Then the angels left. The shepherds left their sheep to look for the baby. They soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them. They were very excited. Then the shepherds returned to the fields where their sheep were. They were praising God for **everything they had heard and seen.**

Then the angels left

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. The angels gave their praise, and then they left. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

everything they had heard and seen

This included the glorious angels and their amazing message, as well as seeing the newborn Messiah himself.

Translation Words

- shepherd, chief shepherd
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - angel, archangel
 - Mary, the mother of Jesus
 - praise, praised, praiseworthy
 - God
-

23:09

There were some men in a country far to the east. They studied the stars and were very wise. They saw **an unusual star** in the sky. They said that it meant that a new king of the Jews had been born. **So they decided to travel from their country to see the child.** After a long journey, they came to Bethlehem and found **the house** where Jesus and his parents were staying.

There were some men in a country far to the east.

This introduces as new characters in the story. These men came from the east to worship Jesus. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

They studied the stars and were very wise

This is background information about why these men knew Jesus had been born and came to see him. (See: [Background Information](#))

They studied the stars

These men may also have had access to the Old Testament prophets' writings that predicted the birth of the Messiah.

an unusual star

The star that they noticed was not a normal star. It was something that appeared at the time of Jesus' birth.

So they decided to travel from their country to see the child

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (a new king of the Jews had been born), with the result (the men decided to travel to see the child). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

the child

As much as a year or two passed before the men arrived in Bethlehem. Jesus was no longer a baby.

the house

They were no longer staying in the place for animals where he was born.

Translation Words

- [wise, wisdom](#)
 - [King of the Jews](#)
 - [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

23:10

When these men saw Jesus with his mother, they **bowed down** and worshiped him. They gave Jesus **expensive** gifts. Then they returned home.

When these men saw Jesus with his mother

The connecting word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. When they saw Jesus, the wisemen bowed down and worshiped. It was their simultaneous response to seeing him. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

bowed down

This could mean 'bowed low to the ground.' At that time, this was the customary way of showing great respect or reverence. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

expensive

This could mean 'very valuable.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 1-2; Luke 2

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- prostrate, worship

24. John Baptizes Jesus

24:00

John Baptizes Jesus

This title can also be translated as: “About what happened when John the Baptist baptized Jesus” or “What happened when John the Baptist baptized Jesus?”

24:01

John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.

John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet.

This introduces a new event—John preaching as an adult. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair

This is background information about how John lived. (See: [Background Information](#))

the wilderness

This could mean ‘the desert’ or ‘a remote, desert-like place.’ There were few people living out in this area.

wild honey

This honey was the natural product of bees in the wilderness; it was not cultivated by people. If that is what people would understand by the word **honey**, you may not need to call it **wild**.

locusts

These were large, hopping insects with wings, like very large grasshoppers. Some people who live in the desert eat them.

wore clothes made from camel hair

This clothing symbolizes that John was a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

clothes made from camel hair

This could mean ‘coarse clothes made of camel hair.’ These clothes would not quickly wear out in the wilderness as other clothes would.

camel hair

A camel is an animal that has very rough hair. People could make clothing out of it. This could be translated as: “rough animal hair.”

Translation Words

- John (the Baptist)
 - Zechariah (NT)
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
-

24:02

Many people came out to **the wilderness** to listen to John. **He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”**

the wilderness

See how you translated this word in [24:01](#).

He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “He preached to them, telling them to repent, for the kingdom of God was near!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!

This sentence emphasizes the urgent reason for them to repent—the kingdom of God was near! (See: [Exclamations](#))

Repent

This is a command. It might be better to say: “Repent from your sins.”

the kingdom of God is near

This could mean ‘the kingdom of God is ready to appear’ or ‘the kingdom of God will arrive soon.’ This refers to God’s ruling over people. This can also be translated as: “God’s reign is about to begin” or “God will soon rule over us as king.”

Translation Words

- John (the Baptist)
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - repent, repentance
 - kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
-

24:03

When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them. Many religious leaders also came to see John, but they **did not repent or confess their sins.**

When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them

The connecting word **When** introduces a sequential clause. First, they heard John's message, then they would repent and John would baptize them. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

repented from their sins

This could also be translated as: "repented concerning their sins" or "changed their minds about their sins" or "turned away from their sins."

did not repent

This could mean 'did not turn away from their sins.'

confess their sins

To confess is to acknowledge that something is true. These leaders did not want to acknowledge that they had sinned. This may be translated as: "confess that they had sinned."

Translation Words

- [John \(the Baptist\)](#)
 - [repent, repentance](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
-

24:04

John said to the religious leaders, "**You poisonous snakes!** Repent and change your behavior. **God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire.**" **John fulfilled what the prophets had said, "See, I will soon send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."**

You poisonous snakes

John speaks of the religious leaders as if they were poisonous snakes. Poisonous snakes are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: "You are evil like poisonous snakes!" (See: [Metaphor](#))

God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire

John speaks of the religious leaders as if they were trees that bear bad fruit. This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. Alternate translation: "God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire

This means: 'He will judge them person who does not do good deeds and punish them.'

every tree that does not bear good fruit

John is not really talking about trees. This is an expression that compares good fruit to good actions and attitudes that come from God.

John fulfilled what the prophets had said, "See, I will soon send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."

In some languages it would be more natural to use an indirect quote for this sentence, such as: John fulfilled what the prophets had said. They told of God's promise to send his messenger ahead of Jesus to prepare his way.

John fulfilled

This could mean 'John was doing' what the prophet said God's messenger would do.

See

This could be translated as: "Look and see" or "Pay attention!"

my messenger

This could mean 'I, Yahweh, will send my messenger.'

ahead of you

In this phrase, the word **you** refers to the Messiah.

prepare your way

God's messenger will prepare the people to listen to the Messiah.

Translation Words

- John (the Baptist)
 - Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
 - repent, repentance
 - fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
-

24:05

Some religious leaders asked John if he was the Messiah. John replied, "I am not the Messiah, but he is coming after me. **He is so great that I am not even worthy to untie his sandals.**"

He is so great

This could be translated as: "He is so important."

I am not even worthy to untie his sandals

Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy to be his slave. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- Jew, Jewish
 - John (the Baptist)
 - Christ, Messiah
-

24:06

The next day, Jesus came for John to baptize him. When John saw him, he said, “**Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.**”

Look!

This sentence emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows. (See: [Exclamations](#))

There is

For some languages, this would be translated as: “Here is” or “That man is.”

the Lamb of God

John speaks of Jesus as if Jesus is a lamb from God. This is a metaphor that represents God’s perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

will take away

The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

world

The word **world** is a metonym and refers to all the people in the world. Alternate translation: “all the people in the world” or “every person in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sin of the world

This could mean ‘the sin of the people in the world.’

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - baptize, baptized, baptism
 - John (the Baptist)
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - God
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

24:07

John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead.” But Jesus said, “You should baptize me, because it is the right thing to do.” So John baptized him **even though Jesus had never sinned.**

John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “John told Jesus that he was not worthy to baptize him, but that Jesus should baptize John instead.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

I am not worthy to baptize you

This could be translated as: “I am not good enough to baptize you” or “I am sinful, so I should not baptize you.”

But Jesus said, “You should baptize me, because it is the right thing to do.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “But Jesus said that John should baptize him because it was the right thing to do.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

it is the right thing to do

This might also be translated as: “it is the proper thing to do” or “this is what God wants me to do.”

even though Jesus had never sinned

The connecting words **even though** introduce a factual condition. Baptism is sign of repentance, but Jesus never sinned, so he had no need to repent. Jesus’ sinlessness was not questioned even though the evidence, his baptism, would seem to say he had repented of sin. (See: [Connect - Factual Conditions](#))

Translation Words

- [John \(the Baptist\)](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

24:08

When Jesus came up out of the water **after being baptized**, the **Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.** At the same time, God spoke from heaven. He said, “**This is my Son.** I love him, and I am very pleased with him.”

after being baptized

This can be stated in active form: “After John baptized Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him

Possible meanings are 1. this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2. the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus. (See: [Simile](#))

This is my Son

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [love, beloved](#)
-

24:09

God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and stay on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God.” There is only one God. **But when John baptized Jesus**, he heard God the Father speak, saw God the Son, who is Jesus, and he saw the Holy Spirit.

God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and stay on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “God had told John that the Holy Spirit would come down and stay on someone he baptized, and that that person would be the Son of God.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

God had told John

This could mean ‘Before this, God had told John’ or ‘Before Jesus came to be baptized, God had told John.’

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

But when John baptized Jesus

The connecting word **But** contrasts the fact that there is only one God, with the fact that there is God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 3; Mark 1; Luke 3; John 1:15-37

Translation Words

- [God](#)

- John (the Baptist)
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- baptize, baptized, baptism
- Son of God, the Son
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Son of God, the Son

25. Satan Tempts Jesus

25:00

Satan Tempts Jesus

This title can also be translated as: "About how Satan tried to get Jesus to sin" or "What happened when Satan tried to get Jesus to sin?"

25:01

Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness. Jesus was there for **40 days and 40 nights**. During that time he fasted, and Satan came to Jesus and **tempted him to sin**.

Immediately after Jesus was baptized

This is a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the Holy Spirit led him

This could mean 'the Holy Spirit guided him' or 'the Holy Spirit prompted him to go.'

the wilderness

This could also be translated as: "the desert" or "a remote, barren place with few people." This place probably had very few trees or other plants, so most people would not be able to live there.

40 days and 40 nights

This means: '40 days, both during the day and during the night.' Make sure the translation of this phrase does not sound like a period of eighty days. (See: [Numbers](#))

tempted him to sin

Since Jesus did not sin, make sure you use a word that does not imply that Satan succeeded in convincing Jesus to sin. This phrase could also be translated as: "tried to convince him to sin."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
 - [fast, fasting](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [tempt, temptation](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

25:02

First, **Satan said to Jesus, “If you are the Son of God, turn these rocks into bread so you can eat!”**

Satan said to Jesus, “If you are the Son of God, turn these rocks into bread so you can eat!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Satan told Jesus that if he was the Son of God, he should turn these rocks into bread so he can eat!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

If you are the Son of God

Satan knew that Jesus was indeed **the Son of God**. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

turn these rocks into bread

This may also be translated as: “make these rocks become bread” or “supernaturally change these rocks into bread.”

bread

For languages where bread is not a common food, this could be translated as: “food.” In the Jews’ culture, bread was the main food. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words

- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [tempt, temptation](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
-

25:03

But Jesus said to Satan, “It is written in God’s word, ‘People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!’”

But Jesus said to Satan, “It is written

Jesus refused to do what Satan asked. This can be clearly stated: “But Jesus said to Satan, ‘No, I will not do that because it is written.’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Jesus said to Satan, "It is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told Satan that it is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "It is written in God's word that people do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

bread

Make sure that you use the same word to translate **bread** here as you did in [25:02](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but they need everything that God tells them!

Another way to translate this would be, "Rather, people need to listen to and obey everything God says."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
- [God](#)

25:04

Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple. **He said to him, "If you are the Son of God, jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"**

He said to him, "If you are the Son of God, jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He told him that if he was the Son of God, he should jump off to the ground, because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

If you are the Son of God

Satan knew that Jesus was indeed **the Son of God**. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

jump off to the ground

This could mean 'jump off this building to the ground.'

it is written

This can be stated in active form: "a prophet of God wrote long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "because it is written that God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

so your foot does not hit a stone

This means: 'so that you will not be hurt at all; not even your foot will be injured on a stone.' It could also be translated as: "so that even your foot will not strike against a stone; you will not be injured at all."

Translation Words

- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [temple](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [angel, archangel](#)
-

25:05

But Jesus did not do what Satan asked him to do. Instead, **he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"**

he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "he said that God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

"God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"

This could be translated as: an indirect quote: "God tells everyone not to test the Lord your God."

he said, "God tells everyone, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "he tells everyone not to test the Lord your God" or "he says that no one should test the Lord your God." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Do not test the Lord your God

This could be translated as: "Do not make the Lord your God prove himself to you" or "Do not challenge God to take care of you even when you do not obey him."

the Lord your God

This could mean 'Yahweh, your God' or 'Yahweh, who is God and has authority over you.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Satan, devil, evil one
 - word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - God
-

25:06

Then Satan showed Jesus all **the kingdoms of the world**. He showed him how powerful they were, and how wealthy they were. **He said to Jesus, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."**

He said to Jesus, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He said to Jesus that he would give him all this if Jesus would bow down and worship him." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

the kingdoms of the world

This refers to all the greatest cities, countries, and other territories of the world.

I will give you all this

This could be translated as: "I will give you all the wealth and power of these kingdoms" or "I will make you the ruler over all these countries, cities and people."

I will give you

It can be stated that Satan indeed had this authority: "I have the authority to give you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bow down

This means that Jesus would serve and worship Satan. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words

- Satan, devil, evil one
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - kingdom
 - glory, glorious, glorify
 - prostrate, worship
-

25:07

Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"

Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told Satan to get away from him! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'"

Jesus refused to do what Satan asked. This can be clearly stated: "But Jesus said to Satan, 'No, I will not do that. Get away from me, Satan.'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Get away from me

This imperative may also be translated as: "Leave me" or "Leave me alone."

he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "he commands his people to worship only the Lord their God, and to honor only him as God." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

the Lord your God

Translate this phrase the same way as you did in [25:05](#).

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [God](#)

25:08

Jesus **did not give in to** Satan's temptations, so Satan left him. Then angels came and took care of Jesus.

did not give in to

This could be translated as: "did not do the things that Satan was tempting him to do."

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Satan, devil, evil one
- tempt, temptation
- angel, archangel

26. Jesus Starts His Ministry

26:00

Jesus Starts His Ministry

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus began to minister to the Jews" or "What happened when Jesus began to minister to the Jews?"

26:01

After Jesus refused Satan's temptations, he returned to the region of Galilee. This is where he lived. The Holy Spirit was giving him much power, and Jesus **went from place to place** and taught people. **Everyone** said good things about him.

After Jesus refused Satan's temptations, he returned

You may prefer to make this into shorter sentences and say: "Jesus did not do the wrong things Satan tried to get him to do. Jesus defeated Satan. After that, Jesus returned." The word **refused** can also be translated as: "rejected" or "resisted."

After Jesus refused Satan's temptations

This begins a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

went from place to place

That is, he "traveled to different towns and other places."

Everyone

This could mean 'Everyone who knew him or heard about him.'

Translation Words

- Satan, devil, evil one
 - tempt, temptation
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - power, powerful, powerfully
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - Galilee, Galilean
-

26:02

Jesus went to the town of Nazareth. This is the village where he had lived when he was a child. On the Sabbath, he went to **the place of worship**. The leaders handed him **a scroll with the**

messages of the prophet Isaiah. They wanted him to read from it. So Jesus **opened up the scroll** and read part of it to the people.

the place of worship

This could mean 'the building where the Jews gathered to worship God.' This can also be translated as: "the worship building."

a scroll

A scroll was a long sheet of paper or leather that was rolled up and had writing on it.

a scroll with the messages of the prophet Isaiah

This could mean 'a scroll that had the words that the prophet Isaiah had written.' Isaiah had written on a scroll hundreds of years before. This was a copy of that scroll.

opened up the scroll

This could be translated as: "rolled open the scroll" or "unrolled the scroll."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Nazareth, Nazarene](#)
 - [Sabbath](#)
 - [prostrate, worship](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
-

26:03

Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."

Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus read that God had given him his Spirit so that he could proclaim good news to the poor. He had sent him to set prisoners free, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

proclaim good news to the poor

This could mean 'to tell poor and needy people the good message that God will help them.'

to set prisoners free

This could mean 'to tell people who are wrongfully in prison that they will be released.'

Translation Words

- God
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - good news, gospel
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
-

26:04

Then Jesus sat down. Everybody was watching him closely. They knew the passage of scripture that he had just read was about the Messiah. **Jesus said, "The things I just read to you, they are happening right now."** All the people were **amazed**. **"Isn't this the son of Joseph?"** they said.

Jesus said, "The things I just read to you, they are happening right now."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus said that the things he just read to them, they are happening right now." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

The things I just read to you, they are happening right now

Other ways to translate this would be "The things you just heard me read are being fulfilled right now" or "Today the things I read to you came true as you heard them."

amazed

Translate the word **amazed** with a term that means that they were surprised, shocked, and confused about how this could be possible.

Isn't this the son of Joseph?

This is a rhetorical question. This could also be translated as: "This man is only the son of Joseph!" or "Everyone knows he is just Joseph's son!" The people were not asking if he was Joseph's son or not. They were wondering how he could be the Messiah since they thought he was only the son of an ordinary man. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - Christ, Messiah
 - Joseph (NT)
-

26:05

Then Jesus said, "It is true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. During the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel. But when it did

not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.”

Then Jesus said, “It is true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. During the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel. But when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus said that it was true that people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in. He also said that during the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel, but when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in

This proverb means ‘people do not recognize the authority of a prophet who has grown up among them.’ (See: [Proverbs](#))

During the time of the prophet Elijah

This is background information about what happened when Elijah was alive. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [true, truth](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Elijah](#)
 - [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [God](#)
-

26:06

Jesus continued, saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not heal any of them. He only healed the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” But the people who were listening to Jesus were Jews. So when they heard him say this, **they were furious at him.**

Jesus continued, saying, “And during

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus continued, saying that during....” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

during the time of the prophet Elisha

This is background information about what happened when Elisha was alive. (See: [Background Information](#))

Elisha

Elisha was God’s prophet who came after Elijah. Like Elijah, Elisha confronted Israelite kings who were sinning against God and he did miracles that God gave him power to do.

a commander

This could mean 'a military leader.'

they were furious at him

The Jews did not want to hear that God had blessed any people besides themselves, so they were very angry at what Jesus said.

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Israel, Israelites
 - cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
 - Naaman
 - Jew, Jewish
-

26:07

The people of Nazareth seized Jesus and dragged him out of **the place of worship**. They took him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him. **But Jesus walked through the crowd** and left the town of Nazareth.

the place of worship

This could mean 'the building where the Jewish people gathered to worship God.' This can also be translated as: "the worship building." See how you translated it in [26:02](#).

But Jesus walked through the crowd

To show that the people were not able to do to Jesus what they had planned to do, **But** could be translated with a strong contrast word or phrase such as: "But instead" or "However."

Translation Words

- Nazareth, Nazarene
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - prostrate, worship
-

26:08

Then Jesus **went throughout the region of Galilee**, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or disabled. There were some who were blind, others who were crippled, deaf, or mute, and Jesus healed them.

went throughout the region of Galilee

This could mean 'all around in Galilee' or 'from place to place in Galilee.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Galilee, Galilean
 - cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
-

26:09

Also, many people **who had demons in them** were brought to Jesus. **Jesus commanded the demons** to come out of them, so the demons came out. **The demons often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”** The crowds of people were amazed, and they praised God.

who had demons in them

This could mean ‘who were controlled by evil spirits.’

Jesus commanded the demons

This could also be translated as: “Jesus gave the command to the demons.”

The demons often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “The demons often shouted that he was the Son of God!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

“You are the Son of God!”

This is a strong statement that Jesus is the Messiah. (See: [Exclamations](#))

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
 - Son of God, the Son
 - prostrate, worship
 - God
-

26:10

Then Jesus chose 12 men from among his disciples to be his special representatives. He called them “apostles.” These apostles traveled with Jesus and **learned from him**.

learned from him

This could mean 'learned from what he taught them' or 'learned from everything he said and did.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 4:12-25; Mark 1-3; Luke 4

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [apostle, apostleship](#)

27. The Story of the Good Samaritan

27:00

The Story of the Good Samaritan

This title can also be translated as: "About how a good man from Samaria helped a Jewish man" or "What happened when a good man from Samaria helped a Jewish man?"

27:01

One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus. He wanted to show everyone that Jesus was teaching wrongly. So **he said, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"** **Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"**

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

an expert in the Jewish law

This man was someone who studied and taught the laws God had given the Israelites, as well as other Jewish laws. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

he said, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "called Jesus **Teacher** and asked what he had to do to inherit eternal life." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to inherit eternal life

This could mean 'to have life with God forever' or 'so that God will give me life with him forever' or 'to receive eternal life from God.' The law expert was asking how he could be worthy to receive eternal life as an inheritance from God the Father.

eternal life

This refers to life forever with God after the mortal body dies. See the key term page for eternal life.

Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus asked him what was written in God's law." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

What is written in God's law?

This could mean 'What is written in God's law about this?' Jesus asked this question because he wanted the man to think about what God's law really teaches.

What is written

This can be stated in active form: "What did God say" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - teacher, Teacher
 - inherit, inheritance, heir
 - eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
 - law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
-

27:02

The man said, "It says, 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself.'" Jesus answered, "You are correct! If you do this, you will have eternal life."

The man said, "It says, 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself.'"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "The man said that we must love the Lord our God with all our heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love our neighbor as ourselves." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Love the Lord your God

You may choose to say: "We must love the Lord our God." Make sure it does not sound like the man is commanding Jesus. Rather, he is quoting what God's law commands people to do.

with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind

This could mean 'with your whole self' or 'with every part of yourself.' In some languages this might be translated as: "with all your liver, breath, strength, and thoughts." The focus is not on each of these parts, but on all of us. Use the concepts in your language that make up the whole person.

heart

The heart refers to the part of a person that has desires and emotions.

soul

The soul refers to the nonphysical, spiritual part of a person.

strength

Strength refers to the physical body and all of its abilities.

mind

The mind refers to the part of a person that thinks, plans, and has ideas.

neighbor

Although the word **neighbor** normally refers to a person who lives near us, the Jews applied the term to everyone except close relatives, foreigners, and enemies.

love your neighbor as yourself

This is an ellipse. The missing information can be stated: “love your neighbor as you love yourself.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

as yourself

That is, he should love his neighbor to the same extent that he loves himself. (See: [Simile](#))

Jesus answered, “You are correct! If you do this, you will have eternal life.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told him that he was correct! If he did this, he would have eternal life.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

you will have eternal life

This can be stated in active form: “God will give you eternal life.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
 - love, beloved
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - God
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - life, live, living, alive
-

27:03

But **the law expert** wanted to show the people that his way of living was correct. So **he asked Jesus, “Well then, who is my neighbor?”**

the law expert

This could mean ‘the expert in the Jewish law.’ See how you translated this term in [27:01](#).

he asked Jesus, “Well then, who is my neighbor?”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “he asked Jesus who was his neighbor.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

who is my neighbor?

This could also be translated as: “what do you mean by ‘neighbor?’” or “which people are my neighbors?” He knew that he did not love everyone, and was asking which people he needed to love. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
-

27:04

Jesus answered **the law expert** by telling **a story**. “**There was a Jewish man** who was traveling along the road **from Jerusalem to Jericho**.”

General Information

The cloud-like frame around this picture indicates that Jesus is telling a story, and not necessarily explaining a historical event.

the law expert

See how you translated this term in [27:01](#).

a story

The story is in the form of a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

There was a Jewish man

This introduces a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

from Jerusalem to Jericho

In some languages you could translate this as: “from the city of Jerusalem to the city of Jericho” or “from Jerusalem City to Jericho City.”

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [Jericho](#)
-

27:05

“But some robbers saw him and attacked him. They took **everything he had** and beat him until he was almost dead. Then they went away.”

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

everything he had

This could mean 'everything he had with him, including the clothes he was wearing.'

27:06

"Soon after that, a Jewish priest happened to walk down that same road. This priest saw that man lying in the road. When he saw him, he moved to the other side of the road and **kept on going. He completely ignored that man."**

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

Soon after that, a Jewish priest

This introduces a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

happened to walk down

This could mean 'happened to be traveling along.' For some languages, it may be necessary to use a word like 'travel' rather than **walk** since the priest was not just walking on the road but was traveling to get to another city.

kept on going

This could mean 'continued traveling down the road.'

He completely ignored that man

This was surprising because the priests were very religious, and would have been expected to help their fellow Jew. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ignored that man

This could mean 'did not help that man' or 'showed no concern for that man.'

Translation Words

- [Jew, Jewish](#)
 - [priest, priesthood](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
-

27:07

"Not long after that, a Levite came down the road. (Levites were a tribe of Jews who helped the priests at the Temple.) The Levite also crossed over to the other side of the road. **He also ignored that man."**

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

Not long after that, a Levite

This introduces a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

came down the road

This could mean 'was traveling down that same road.'

(Levites were a tribe of Jews who helped the priests at the Temple.)

This is background information to tell the reader who the Levites were. (See: [Background Information](#))

Levites were a tribe of Jews

This could mean 'Levites were from the Israelite tribe of Levi' or 'Levites were from the Israelite clan of Levi.'

He also ignored that man

This was surprising because the Levites served in the Temple, and would have been expected to help their fellow Jew. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ignored

This could mean 'did not help.'

Translation Words

- Jew, Jewish
 - priest, priesthood
 - temple
-

27:08

"The next person to walk down that road was a man from Samaria. (Samaritans and Jews hated each other.) The Samaritan saw the man in the road. He saw he was Jewish, but he still had very strong compassion for him. So he went to him and bandaged his wounds."

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

The next person to walk down that road was a man from Samaria

This introduces a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

to walk down

This could mean 'to travel along.' These people were traveling from one city to another. Make sure that it does not sound like they were just taking a walk.

(Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)

This is background information to tell the reader that the Samaritans and Jews were enemies. (See: [Background Information](#))

He saw he was Jewish, but he still had very strong compassion for him

This was surprising because the the Jews and Samaritans hated each other, so he would not have been expected to help the Jewish man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
-

27:09

"Then the Samaritan lifted the man onto **his own donkey**. He took him to **an inn by the road**. There he continued to take care of him."

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

his own donkey

Make sure it is clear that **his** refers to the Samaritan.

an inn by the road

This could mean 'a lodging place along the road.' This is a place where travelers could get food and stay overnight.

Translation Words

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
-

27:10

"The next day, the Samaritan needed **to continue his journey**. He gave some money to the person **in charge of** the inn. **He said to him, 'Take care of this man. If you spend any more money than this, I will repay those expenses when I return.'**"

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

to continue his journey

This could be translated as: “to continue traveling toward his destination.”

in charge of

This could mean ‘who managed.’ It could be that this person also owned this lodging place.

He said to him, ‘Take care of this man. If you spend any more money than this, I will repay those expenses when I return.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “He told him to take care of the man, and if he spent any more money than this, he would repay those expenses when he returned.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Take care of this man

In order for it to be clear that this was a polite request, not an order, for some languages, it may be preferable to say: “Please take care of this man.”

will repay those expenses

This could also be translated as: “will repay you” or “will pay back that money” or “will repay it.”

Translation Words

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
-

27:11

Then **Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?”** He replied, **“The one who was merciful to him.”** Jesus told him, **“You go and do the same.”**

Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus asked the law expert which of the three men he thought was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

the law expert

This could mean ‘the expert in the Jewish law.’ See how you translated this term in [27:01](#).

the three men

The three men were the priest, the Levite, and the Samaritan.

was a neighbor

This can also be translated as: "behaved as a neighbor" or "was a friend" or "acted in a loving way." See how you translated **neighbor** in [27:02](#) and [27:03](#).

a neighbor

Jesus is using the word **neighbor** in a broader sense than in [27:02](#). **Neighbor** here refers to anyone that we meet who needs our help.

He replied, "The one who was merciful to him."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He replied that it was the one who was merciful to him." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Jesus told him, "You go and do the same."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told him to go and to do the same." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

You go and do

This could mean 'You, too, should go and do' or 'Now you must do.' Jesus was commanding the law expert to do as the Samaritan did.

do the same

This could mean 'love others, even your enemies.' Make sure it does not sound like "the same" is only referring to helping a wounded man. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Luke 10:25-37

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)

28. The Rich Young Ruler

28:00

The Rich Young Ruler

This title can also be translated as: "About how a wealthy and important young man came to speak to Jesus" or "What happened when a wealthy and important young man came to speak to Jesus?"

28:01

One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws."

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a rich young ruler

This man was already a rich and powerful political official, even though he was still young. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

came up to Jesus

This could mean 'approached Jesus.'

asked him, "Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "asked him what he must do to have eternal life." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Good teacher

This could mean 'righteous teacher.' He was not saying that Jesus was simply a skilled teacher.

to have eternal life

This could mean 'to receive eternal life' or 'to live with God forever.' Also consider how **eternal life** was translated in [27:01](#) and see the note about that there.

Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus asked him why he called him 'good' since there is only one who is good, and that is God. Then he told him to obey God's laws in order to have eternal life." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Why do you call me 'good'?

Jesus is not denying that he is good. Rather, he is asking if the ruler understands that Jesus is God. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

There is only one who is good, and that is God

Other ways to say this are: "The only one who is truly good is God" or "God is the only one who is truly good."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
 - [teacher, Teacher](#)
 - [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
 - [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#)
-

28:02

"Which ones do I need to obey?" he asked. Jesus replied, "Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor as you love yourself."

"Which ones do I need to obey?" he asked

This could mean 'Which laws do I need to obey in order to receive eternal life?' This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "He asked him which laws he needed to obey" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Jesus replied, "Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor as you love yourself."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus replied that he must not commit murder, or commit adultery, or steal, or lie, and must honor his father and mother, and love his neighbor as he loves himself." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

as you love yourself

This could mean 'as much as you love yourself' or 'to the same degree that you love yourself.' (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
 - [love, beloved](#)
-

28:03

But **the young man said, “I have obeyed all these laws ever since I was a boy. What do I still need to do in order to live forever?”** Jesus looked at him and **loved him.**

the young man said, “I have obeyed all these laws ever since I was a boy. What do I still need to do in order to live forever?”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “the young man said that he had obeyed all these laws ever since he was a boy, and asked what he still needed to do in order to live forever.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ever since I was a boy

Another way to say this would be: “from the time I was a child until now.”

What do I still need to do

This could mean ‘What else do I need to do’ or ‘What do I need to do in addition to these’

loved him

Jesus had compassion on him. Choose a word for love that is consistent with the kind of love God has for people.

Translation Words

- obey, obedient
 - law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - love, beloved
-

28:04

Jesus answered, “If you want to be perfect, then go and sell everything you own and give the money to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come and follow me.”

Jesus answered, “If you want to be perfect, then go and sell everything you own and give the money to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come and follow me.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus answered that if he wanted to be perfect, then he should go and sell everything he owned and give the money to the poor, and he would have treasure in heaven. Then he should come and follow him.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

you

If your language has different words for **you** depending on the number of people intended, use the singular form. Jesus was addressing this command to this one man. (See: [Pronouns](#))

perfect

This could mean 'completely righteous.'

everything you own

This could mean 'all of your possessions.'

the poor

That is, the poor people. (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

treasure in heaven

The phrase **treasure in heaven** is a metaphor that refers to a reward from God. Alternate translation: "God will reward you in heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

treasure

This could also be translated as: "riches" or "great wealth."

in heaven

This could also be translated as: "located in heaven when you arrive there." This treasure will exist 'there and then,' as opposed to the wealth that Jesus asked the young man to give up 'here and now.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
-

28:05

When the young man **heard what Jesus said**, he became very sad because he was very rich and did not want to give away all the things he possessed. He turned and went away from Jesus.

heard what Jesus said

This could mean 'heard Jesus tell him to give away what he owned.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

28:06

Then **Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”**

Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told his disciples that it is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! He said that it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God!

This is a strong statement that it is extremely hard for rich people to be saved. (See: [Exclamations](#))

to enter into the kingdom of God

This can also be translated as: “to become a citizen in God’s kingdom.”

it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God

This is an exaggerated statement in order to emphasize the difficulty of a rich person being saved. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

a camel

Camels are very large animals that are often used to carry heavy loads. If camels are not known in your language area, a phrase such as ‘a very large animal’ or ‘a beast of burden’ could be used. If you choose to substitute the name of some other large animal, such as ‘an ox’ or ‘a donkey,’ make sure that the animal would have been known by the people Jesus was talking to.

the eye of a needle

This refers to the tiny hole in the end of a sewing needle. The idea of something as large as a camel going through the eye of a needle is intended to represent something that is impossible.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)

28:07

When the disciples heard what Jesus said, **they were shocked. They said, “If it is like this, who will God save?”**

they were shocked

This could mean 'greatly astonished.' They believed that God made people rich because they were more righteous than other people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They said, "If it is like this, who will God save?"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "They asked who God would save if it was like this." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

If it is like this, who will God save?

This could also be translated as: "If God does not allow rich people to have eternal life, how can anyone else be saved?" This is perhaps a rhetorical question that means 'If God does not save rich people, then it seems like he will not save anyone!' (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

save

Here it refers to God not judging or condemning them for their sin, and allowing them to be citizens in his kingdom.

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
-

28:08

Jesus looked at the disciples and **said, "It is impossible for people to save themselves. But nothing is impossible for God to do."**

said, "It is impossible for people to save themselves. But nothing is impossible for God to do."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "said that it is impossible for people to save themselves, but nothing is impossible for God to do." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

nothing is impossible for God to do

This could also be translated as: "God is able to do anything, even save a rich person" or "God is able to do impossible things, so he can save even a rich person."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [God](#)
-

28:09

Peter **said to Jesus, “We disciples have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?”**

said to Jesus, “We disciples have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “told Jesus that the disciples had left everything and followed him, and asked what their reward would be.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

left everything

This could mean ‘left everything behind’ or ‘given up everything we owned.’

What will be our reward?

Other ways to say this are: “What reward will we receive” or “How will we be rewarded?” or “What will God give us as a reward?” It may also be necessary to add, “because we have done this?”

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

28:10

Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first.”

Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told them that everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for his sake will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life. He said that many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

has left

This could mean ‘has left behind’ or ‘has given up’ or ‘has counted as less important than God.’

for my sake

This may also be translated as: “because of me” or “on my account.”

100 times more

This could mean ‘very much more than he had before.’ (See: [Numbers](#))

many who are first will be last, and many who are last will be first

Here **first** and **last** refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. Alternate translation: "But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

many who are first will be last

This could mean 'many people who are important now, will not be important then.'

many who are last will be first

This could mean 'many people who are considered to not be very important on earth will be considered very important in heaven' or 'Many people who are considered now to be of little value on earth will be highly valued in heaven.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 19:16-30; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:18-30

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)

29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant

29:00

The Story of the Unmerciful Servant

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened when a servant did not show mercy" or "What happened when a servant did not show mercy?"

29:01

One day, Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?" Jesus said, "Not seven times, but 70 times seven!" By this, Jesus meant that we should always forgive. Then Jesus told this story.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "called Jesus his master and asked him if he should forgive his brother as many as seven times when he sins against him." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Jesus said, "Not seven times, but 70 times seven!"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told him to forgive not only seven times, but 70 times seven!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

my brother

This term sometimes included people who were not actually siblings, but who shared another very strong connection such as religion, ethnic background, etc.

sins against me

This could also be translated as: "does something wrong against me."

Not seven times, but 70 times seven!

This could be translated as: "You should not forgive only seven times, rather you should forgive 70 times seven times." Jesus was not talking about an exact number. He was saying that we should forgive people every time they sin against us.

70 times

This could also be written in words: "seventy times." (See: [Numbers](#))

By this, Jesus meant that we should always forgive

This could be translated as: "Jesus wanted to say that we should always forgive anyone who sins against us."

this story

The story is in the form of a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

29:02

Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."

Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus said that the kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants, one of whom owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

The kingdom of God is like

Other ways to say this are: "God's rule over people is like" or "The way God rules people can be compared to." (See: [Simile](#))

is like a king who

This could be translated as: "is like the kingdom of a king who" or "can be compared with the rule of a king who."

to settle accounts with his servants

This could mean 'to collect the debts his servants owed him' or 'to collect the money his servants had borrowed from him.'

200,000

This can be written in words: "two hundred thousand years." It represents an exceptionally long time. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

29:03

“But the servant could not pay his debt, so **the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.’**”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “the king said to sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Sell this man and his family as slaves

This was a command from the king.

to pay his debt

This could mean ‘to pay back the money he owed to the king.’

to pay his debt

It can be stated that the reason the man would be sold was so that the money received from selling him could pay part of what he owed to they king. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - king, kingdom, kingship
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

29:04

“The servant **fell on his knees before the king and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’** The king **felt pity** for the servant, so he **canceled all of his debt** and let him go.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

fell on his knees

This could mean ‘quickly knelt down on the ground.’ This was a way to show his humility and his desire for the king to help him. Make sure it doesn’t sound like he fell down accidentally. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

before the king

This means: 'in front of the king.'

and said, 'Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "and asked him to please be patient with him, and he would pay the full amount that he owed him." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

felt pity

This could mean 'felt compassion for' or 'felt sorry for.' The king knew that the servant and his family would suffer greatly if they were sold into slavery.

canceled all of his debt

This can be translated as: "said that the servant did not need to pay back any of the money that he owed the king."

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
-

29:05

"But when the servant went out from the king, he found **a fellow servant** who owed him a debt worth four months' wages. The servant grabbed his fellow servant **and said, 'Pay me the money that you owe me!'**"

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

a fellow servant

This refers to another man who was also a servant of the king.

and said, 'Pay me the money that you owe me!'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "and told him to pay him the money that he owed him." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
-

29:06

“The fellow servant fell on his knees and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ But instead, the servant **threw his fellow servant into prison** until he could pay the debt.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

The fellow servant

Translate this phrase in the same way as in [29:05](#).

fell on his knees

This phrase has the same meaning as in [29:04](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and asked him to please be patient with him, and he would pay the full amount that he owed him.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

threw his fellow servant into prison

This could also be translated as: “had the man put into prison.” The word **threw** is figurative and means it was done in a forceful way.

Translation Words

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
-

29:07

“Some other servants saw **what had happened** and **were greatly disturbed**. They went to the king and told him **everything**.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

what had happened

This could mean ‘that the servant had refused to cancel the other servant’s debt and had put him into prison.’

were greatly disturbed

This could mean ‘deeply grieved’ or ‘very distressed.’

everything

This could mean 'they told the king what the servant had done to his fellow servant.'

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - king, kingdom, kingship
-

29:08

"The king **called the servant and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you begged me. You should have done the same.'** The king was so angry that he **threw** the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt."

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

called the servant

This could mean 'commanded the servant to come to him' or 'ordered his guards to bring the servant to him.'

and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you begged me. You should have done the same.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "and called him a wicked servant. He said that he had forgiven him his debts because he begged him. He should have done the same." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

You wicked servant!

The king said this to emphasize how wicked the servant was. (See: [Exclamations](#))

begged me

This could be translated as: "pleaded with me" or "urgently asked me to be merciful."

You should have done the same

This could mean 'You should have forgiven the man who owed you, just as I forgave you.'

threw

This could mean 'commanded his guards to put.' Consider how **threw** was translated in frame [29:06](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- beg, beggar, needy

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
-

29:09

Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”

Then Jesus said

Some languages may add: “to his disciples.”

Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus said that his heavenly Father will do this to every one of his disciples if they do not forgive their brother from their heart.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

This

This refers back to the way the king punished the unforgiving servant in [29:08](#).

you...you...your...your

All occurrences of these words are plural. Jesus is speaking to his disciples, but this parable teaches a general truth that applies to all believers. (See: [Pronouns](#))

my heavenly Father

This could mean ‘my Father in heaven.’ Jesus is expressing his unique, personal relationship to God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

your brother

See how you translated this in [29:01](#).

from your heart

The phrase **from your heart** is an idiom that means ‘sincerely.’ Alternate translation: “with sincerity” or “truly” or “genuinely” or “honestly.” (See: [Idiom](#))

heart

Here **heart** is a metonym for a person’s inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 18:21-35

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People

30:00

Jesus Feeds Thousands of People

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus fed thousands of people" or "What happened when Jesus fed thousands of people?"

30:01

Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages. When they returned to where Jesus was, they told him what they had done. Then Jesus invited them to go with him to **a quiet place** across the lake to rest for a while. So, they got into a boat and went to the other side of the lake.

a quiet place

This refers to a place with few people where they could be by themselves.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [apostle, apostleship](#)
 - [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
-

30:02

But there were many people who saw Jesus and the disciples leave in the boat. These people ran along the shore of the lake to get to the other side ahead of them. So when Jesus and the disciples **arrived**, a large group of people was already there, waiting for them.

General Information

This is background information about how the crowd came to be with Jesus when he performed a miracle by feeding 5,000 people. (See: [Background Information](#))

arrived

This could mean 'got to the other side of the lake' or 'got there.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

30:03

The crowd had over **5,000 men** in it, **not counting the women and children**. Jesus felt great compassion towards the people. **To Jesus**, these people were **like sheep without a shepherd**. So he taught them and healed the people among them who were sick.

5,000 men

This can be written in words: "five thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

not counting the women and children

This could mean 'not counting the women and children who were with them' or 'and there were also women and children in addition to the men.' Another way to translate this could also be, "in addition, there were many women and children."

To Jesus

This could mean 'Jesus knew that' or 'Jesus understood that.'

like sheep without a shepherd

This could be translated as: "vulnerable and lost, just like sheep are when they have no shepherd to take care of them." (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
 - [shepherd, chief shepherd](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
-

30:04

Late in the day, the disciples **told Jesus**, **"It is late and there are no towns nearby. Send the people away so they can go get something to eat."**

Late in the day

This could also be translated as: "When it was almost evening."

told Jesus, **"It is late and there are no towns nearby. Send the people away so they can go get something to eat."**

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "told Jesus that it was late and there were no towns nearby. So they asked him to send the people away so they could go get something to eat." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Send the people away

This could be translated as: "Please tell the people to go to a town" or "Shouldn't you tell the people to go somewhere?" or "Let the people go to a town." Make sure it sounds like a polite request, not an order.

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

30:05

But Jesus **said to the disciples, "You give them something to eat!"** They responded, **"How can we do that? We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish."**

said to the disciples, "You give them something to eat!"

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "told the disciples to give them something to eat." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

You give them something to eat!

Jesus said this to emphasize that the disciples themselves should find food for the people. (See: [Exclamations](#))

You

The word **You** is plural, referring to the disciples. (See: [Pronouns](#))

They responded, "How can we do that? We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish."

This is a direct quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation: "They asked how they could do that, since they only had five loaves of bread and two small fish." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

How can we do that?

This could be translated as: "We cannot do that!" or "It is impossible to do that!" The disciples were not asking an actual question. Rather, they were strongly expressing that they did not think this was possible. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

30:06

Jesus told his disciples to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.

Jesus told his disciples to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.

This is an indirect quotation. It can be stated as a direct quotation: "Jesus told his disciples, 'Tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

50 people

This can be written as numerals: "fifty people" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

30:07

Then **Jesus took the five loaves of bread** and the two fish, **looked up to heaven**, and thanked God for the food.

Jesus took the five loaves of bread

He did not steal the loaves. Alternate translation: "Jesus held the five loaves of bread in his hands" (See: [Idiom](#))

looked up to heaven

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
 - [God](#)
-

30:08

Then Jesus **broke the bread and the fish** into pieces. He gave the pieces to his disciples to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and **it never ran out!** All the people ate and **were satisfied.**

broke the bread and the fish

This could mean 'tore the bread and the fish.'

it never ran out!

Another way to say this would be: "there was always more left!"

were satisfied

This could mean 'were no longer hungry' or 'were not hungry anymore.' (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

30:09

After that, the disciples collected the food that had not been eaten. It was enough to fill **12 baskets!** All the food came from the five loaves of bread and two fish.

12 baskets

This can be stated with words: "twelve baskets" (See: [Numbers](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:31-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:5-15

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)

31. Jesus Walks on Water

31:00

Jesus Walks on Water

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus walked on the sea" or "What happened when Jesus walked on the sea?"

31:01

After Jesus fed the crowd, he told the disciples to get into a boat. He told them to sail to the other side of the lake while he stayed behind for a little while. So the disciples left, and Jesus sent the crowd to their homes. After that Jesus went up on a **mountainside** to pray. He was there all alone, and he prayed until late at night.

After Jesus fed the crowd, he told the disciples to get into a boat.

This introduces a new event. Jesus would come to the disciples on the water. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a mountainside

This could mean 'the side of a mountain.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [pray, prayer](#)
-

31:02

During this time, the disciples were **rowing their boat**, but the wind was blowing hard against them. When it was late in the night, they had only reached the middle of the lake.

During this time

This could mean 'While Jesus was praying on the mountainside.'

rowing their boat

The boat had a sail, but it would not have worked when the wind was against them.

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [pray, prayer](#)
-

31:03

At that time, Jesus finished praying and started to go back to meet his disciples. He walked on top of the water toward their boat.

31:04

Then the disciples saw him. They were very afraid because they thought he was **a ghost**. Jesus knew that they were afraid, **so he called out to them and said, "Do not be afraid. It is I!"**

a ghost

This could mean 'a spirit.' They thought Jesus was a spirit, since normally a human being cannot walk on water.

so he called out to them and said, "Do not be afraid. It is I!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "so he called out to them and told them not to be afraid, for it was he!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Do not be afraid

For some languages, it may be more natural to say here: "Stop being afraid."

It is I!

For some, it might be more natural to translate this as: "It is me, Jesus."

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

31:05

Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, **if it is you**, command me to come to you on the water." **Jesus told Peter, "Come!"**

if it is you

This could mean 'if it is really you, and not a ghost.'

Jesus told Peter, "Come!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "Jesus told Peter to come to him!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Come!

This could mean 'Come here' or 'Come to me' or 'Come, walk to me.'

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
-

31:06

So, Peter got out of the boat and started walking to Jesus on the surface of the water. But after walking a short distance, he **turned his eyes away from** Jesus and began to look at the waves and to feel the strong wind.

turned his eyes away from

This expression means 'looked away from.' It could also be translated as: "stopped looking at." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

31:07

Then Peter became afraid and began to sink in the water. He cried out, "Master, save me!" Right away, Jesus reached out and grabbed him. Then he said to Peter, "**You have so little faith! Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?**"

You have so little faith!

This may also be translated as: "You have so little faith in me!" or "You do not trust me very much!"

Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?

Jesus uses a question to tell Peter that he should not have doubted. You can make explicit what Peter should not have doubted. Alternate translation: "you should not have doubted that I could keep you from sinking!" (See: [Rhetorical Question, Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - faith
-

31:08

Then Peter and Jesus got into the boat, and the wind immediately stopped blowing. The water became calm. **The disciples were amazed** and bowed down to Jesus. **They worshiped him and said to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”**

The disciples were amazed

If you need to be more specific, it can be stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: “They were completely amazed at what he had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They worshiped him and said to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “They worshiped him and said to him that he was truly the Son of God.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Truly, you are the Son of God

Other ways to say this would be: “You really are the Son of God” or “It really is true that you are the Son of God.”

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 14:22-33; Mark 6:45-52; John 6:16-21

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [Son of God, the Son](#)

32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman

32:00

Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus healed a sick woman and a man who was possessed by a demon" or "What happened when Jesus healed a sick woman and a man who was possessed by a demon?"

32:01

Jesus and his disciples went in their boat to the region where **the Gerasene people** lived. They reached land and got out of their boat.

the Gerasene people

The Gerasenes lived in an area along the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee. They were descendants of the Jews, but we know few details about them.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

32:02

Now there was a man there who **was demon possessed**.

was demon possessed

This could mean 'had demons in him' or 'was controlled by evil spirits.'

Translation Words

- [demon-possessed](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

32:03

This man was so strong that nobody could control him. Sometimes people even fastened his arms and legs with chains, but he kept breaking them.

This man was so strong that nobody could control him. Sometimes people even fastened his arms and legs with chains, but he kept breaking them.

This is background information about the man who was possessed by a demon. (See: [Background Information](#))

fastened his arms and legs

This could mean 'restrained' or 'bound.'

kept breaking them

Some languages may need to say: "kept breaking the chains."

32:04

The man lived **among the tombs** in the area. This man would scream all day and all night. He did not wear clothes, and he often cut himself with stones.

among the tombs

This could mean 'near the tombs' or 'around the tombs.'

Translation Words

- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
-

32:05

This man ran up to Jesus and **knelt down in front of him**. Then Jesus spoke to the demon in the man and **said, "Come out of this man!"**

knelt down in front of him

This was a symbolic action to show that he was submitting to Jesus and asking for his help. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

said, "Come out of this man!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told him to come out of the man!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit](#)
-

32:06

The demon **cried out** in a loud voice, **“What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!”** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, **“My name is Legion, because we are many.”**

cried out

This could mean ‘shouted’ or ‘exclaimed.’

What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

This is not a real question asking for information. The demon was terrified that Jesus would judge him. Some languages will have to express this as a statement such as: “Please do not judge me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

What do you want with me

This expression means ‘What are you going to do to me?’ (See: [Idiom](#))

Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

the Most High God

This could mean ‘the Supreme God’ or ‘the Most Sovereign God’ or ‘the Most Powerful God.’ The meaning of **high** here refers to God’s greatness. It does not refer to altitude or being tall.

“My name is Legion, because we are many.”

A legion was a group of several thousand soldiers in the Roman army. The name **Legion** is a metaphor that speaks of the demons as if they were a large group of soldiers. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Legion

This was the name of the group of demons, but it also indicates that the evil spirits were very numerous. Use the name if the note that follows will make the meaning clear in your language. If not, you may need to translate the word as something like ‘Army’ or ‘Crowd’ or ‘Thousands.’

we are many

This could mean ‘there are many of us’ or ‘we are many demons.’

Translation Words

- [demon-possessed](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Son of God, the Son](#)
- [God](#)

32:07

The demons begged Jesus, "Please **do not send us** out of this region!" **There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill.** So the demons begged Jesus, "**Please send us** into the pigs **instead!**" Jesus said, "Alright, go into them!"

do not send us

This could mean 'do not make us go.'

There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill.

This is background information about the pigs. (See: [Background Information](#))

Please send us

This could mean 'Please let us go.' Here **us** is exclusive. It refers to the demons only, and does not include Jesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

instead

This could mean 'instead of making us go away.'

Translation Words

- [demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit](#)
 - [beg, beggar, needy](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

32:08

So the demons came out of the man and entered the pigs. The pigs ran down a steep bank into the lake and drowned. There were about **2,000 pigs** in the **herd**.

2,000 pigs

This can be written in words: "two thousand pigs" (See: [Numbers](#))

herd

This could mean 'herd of pigs' or 'group of pigs.' Many languages have specific names for groups of animals, such as "flock of sheep," "herd of cattle," "pack of dogs," and "school of fish." Use a word that can appropriately be used for a large group of pigs.

Translation Words

- [demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit](#)
-

32:09

There were people taking care of those pigs. When they saw **what happened**, they ran into the town. There they told everyone what Jesus had done. The people from the town came and saw the man **who used to have the demons**. He was sitting calmly, wearing clothes, and acting like a normal person.

what happened

This could mean 'how Jesus sent the demons out of the man and into the pigs.'

who used to have the demons

This could mean 'in whom the demons had lived' or 'who had been controlled by the evil spirits.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
-

32:10

The people were very afraid and asked Jesus to leave. So Jesus got into the boat. The man who used to have the demons **begged to go along with Jesus.**

The people

Some languages may prefer to say: "The people from that region" or "The Gerasene people."

were very afraid and asked Jesus to leave

This is an ellipse. The missing information can be stated: "were very afraid of Jesus and asked him to leave." (See: [Ellipsis](#))

begged to go along with Jesus

This could mean 'begged Jesus to let him go with him' or 'earnestly asked Jesus if he could go with him.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - beg, beggar, needy
-

32:11

But **Jesus said to him, "No. I want you to go home and tell everyone what God has done for you. Tell them how he has had mercy on you."**

Jesus said to him, “No. I want you to go home and tell everyone what God has done for you. Tell them how he has had mercy on you.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Jesus told him to go home and tell everyone what God has done for him, and to tell them how God had mercy on him.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

how he has had mercy on you

This can be translated as: “how he has shown mercy to you” or “that he has been merciful to you.”

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [mercy, merciful](#)
-

32:12

So the man went away and told everyone about what Jesus had done for him. Everyone who **heard his story** was amazed.

heard his story

This could mean ‘heard the man tell what had happened to him.’

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

32:13

Jesus returned to the other side of the lake. After he arrived there, a large crowd gathered around him and **pressed in on him. In the crowd was a woman** who had suffered from **a bleeding problem** for 12 years. She had paid all of her money to doctors so they would heal her, but **she only got worse.**

Jesus returned to the other side of the lake

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus. This can be clearly stated: “Jesus and his disciples returned to the other side of the lake” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pressed in on him

This could mean ‘pushed tightly against him’ or ‘crowded in tightly around him.’

In the crowd was a woman

This introduces the woman as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

a bleeding problem

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition. (See: [Euphemism](#))

she only got worse

This could mean 'her condition only got worse' or 'her health got worse instead of better' or 'instead she became more sick.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
-

32:14

She had heard that Jesus had healed many sick people and thought, **'I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed too!'** So she came up behind Jesus and touched his clothes. As soon as she touched them, the bleeding stopped!

I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed too!

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus' garment. This tells why she touched Jesus' garment. (See: [Order of Events](#))

if I can just touch Jesus' clothes

According to Jewish law, she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus' power would heal her and yet (she thought) he would not know that she touched him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
-

32:15

Immediately, Jesus realized that **power had gone out from him**. So **he turned around and asked, "Who touched me?"** The disciples replied, "There are many people crowding around you and bumping into you. **Why did you ask, 'Who touched me?'**"

power had gone out from him

This may be translated as: “healing power had flowed from him into someone else” or “his power had healed someone.” Jesus did not lose any power because of this.

he turned around and asked, “Who touched me?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “he turned around and asked who touched him.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Why did you ask, ‘Who touched me?’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Why did you ask who touched you?” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [power, powerful, powerfully](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

32:16

The woman **fell on her knees before Jesus, shaking and very afraid**. Then she told him what she had done, and that she had been healed. Jesus said to her, **“Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”**

fell on her knees

This could mean ‘quickly knelt down.’ She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

before Jesus

This could mean ‘in front of Jesus.’

shaking and very afraid

This could mean ‘shaking with fear’ or ‘trembling because she was afraid.’

Your faith has healed you

Here **faith** is an abstract noun. This could also be translated as: “God has healed you because you trusted in him.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Go in peace

People spoke this traditional blessing when they left each other. Other languages may say something similar such as: “Go well” or “Go with God” or “Peace.” Other ways of translating it could be: “May you have peace as you go” or “Go and know that all is well between us.” (See: [Idiom](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 8:28-34; 9:20-22; Mark 5; Luke 8:26-48

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- faith
- cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

33. The Story of the Farmer

33:00

The Story of the Farmer

This title can also be translated as: "About a farmer who planted some seed" or "What happened when a farmer planted some seed?"

33:01

One day, Jesus was near the shore of the lake. He was teaching a very large crowd of people. So many people came to hear him that Jesus did not have enough room to speak to them all. So he got into a boat in the water. There he sat and taught the people.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

33:02

Jesus told **this story**. "A farmer went out to plant some seed. As he was **spreading the seed by hand**, some of the seed happened to fall on the path. But birds came and ate all of that seed."

this story

The story is in the form of a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

spreading the seed by hand

This could mean 'throwing the seed on the soil' or 'covering all of his crop soil with seed.' This is the way that farmers in the ancient Middle East typically planted grain-bearing crops.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

33:03

“Other seed fell on rocky ground, where there was very little soil. The seed in **the rocky ground** sprouted quickly, but its roots were not able to go deep into the soil. When the sun came up and it got hot, the plants withered and died.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

the rocky ground

This could mean ‘ground that was full of rocks.’

33:04

“Still other seed fell among thorn bushes. This seed began to grow, but the thorns **choked it out**. So the plants that grew from the seed in **the thorny ground** did not produce any grain.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

choked it out

This can also be translated as: “overshadowed it” or “crowded it out.”

the thorny ground

This could mean ‘the ground that was covered with thorny bushes.’

33:05

“Other seed fell into **good soil**. This seed grew up and produced **30, 60, or even 100 times** as much grain as the seed that had been planted. Whoever wants to follow God, let him pay attention to what I am saying!”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

good soil

This could mean ‘fertile soil’ or ‘soil that was good for growing plants.’

30, 60, or even 100 times

This can be written in words: "thirty, sixty, or even one hundred times" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words

- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

33:06

This story confused the disciples. So Jesus explained, "**The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it.** Then the devil **takes the word away from him.** That is, the devil keeps him from understanding it."

This story confused the disciples.

This could mean 'The disciples did not understand this story.'

The seed is the word of God

The **word** represents God's message. Sowing the message represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "The sowing of the seed is teaching people God's message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it

The **path** represents the person who hears God's word. Alternate translation: "The path is like the person who hears God's message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

is a person

This comparison can also be translated as: "is like a person" or "represents a person" or "refers to a person" or "is speaking about a person."

takes the word away from him

This may also be translated as: "takes God's word away, causing him to forget it" or "steals the word from his heart so he won't believe it and be saved." You may also add the following: 'just as birds eat up the seed that falls on a path.'

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
-

33:07

“The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when **he suffers hardships, or when other people make him suffer**, he **falls away** from God. That is, he stops trusting in God.”

General Information

Jesus continues to explain the story.

The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy

The **rocky ground** represents the person who hears and accepts God’s word for a short time. Alternate translation: “The rocky ground is like the person who hears God’s message and accepts it with joy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The rocky ground

See how you translated this term in [33:03](#).

is a person

See how you translated this comparison in [33:06](#).

accepts it with joy

This metaphor speaks of believing God’s word as accepting it. Alternate translation: “joyfully believes it” or “joyfully agrees that it is true” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he suffers hardships, or when other people make him suffer

It may be helpful to explain that tribulation comes because people believe God’s message. Alternate translation: “he suffers because he believe God’s message” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

falls away

This could mean ‘no longer follows God or obeys him’ or ‘stops following or obeying God.’

Translation Words

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

33:08

“The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word. But he begins to worry about many things, and he tries to make a lot of money, and he tries to get many things. After some time, he is not able to love God any longer. So what he learned from God’s word does not make him able to please God. **He is like wheat stalks that do not produce any grain.**”

General Information

Jesus continues to explain the story.

The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word

The **thorny ground** represents the person who hears God's word, but then ignores it. Alternate translation: "The thorny ground is like the person who hears God's message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

The thorny ground

See how you translated this term in [33:04](#).

is a person

See how you translated this comparison in [33:06](#).

He is like wheat stalks

Jesus speaks of the person as if he is like stalks of wheat. (See: [Simile](#))

do not produce any grain

This could mean 'do not produce spiritual fruit' or 'do not behave in a way that shows God's Spirit is working in him.'

grain

Jesus speaks of a person's good works as if they were grain. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
 - [love, beloved](#)
 - [God](#)
-

33:09

"But **the seed in the good soil is a person who hears the word of God, believes it, and produces fruit.**"

General Information

Jesus continues to explain the story.

the seed in the good soil is a person who hears the word of God, believes it, and produces fruit

The **seed in the good soil** represents the person who hears and believes God's word, and produces fruit as a result. Alternate translation: "The seed in the good soil is like the person who hears and understand God's message, and then produces fruit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the good soil

See how you translated this term in [33:05](#).

is a person

See how you translated this comparison in [33:06](#).

produces fruit

This could mean 'produces spiritual fruit' or 'behaves in a way that shows God's Spirit is working in him.'

fruit

Jesus speaks of a person's good works as if they were fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:1-23; Mark 4:1-20; Luke 8:4-15

Translation Words

- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [word of truth](#), [scripture](#)
- [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#)

34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories

34:00

Jesus Teaches Other Stories

This title can also be translated as: "About other stories that Jesus taught" or "What other stories did Jesus teach?"

34:01

Jesus told many other **stories** about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, "**The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed** that someone planted in his field. You know that **the mustard seed is the smallest seed of all.**"

stories

Jesus used these stories as parables to teach truths about God's kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here. (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed

This simile speaks of the kingdom of God as if it were a mustard seed. (See: [Simile](#))

the mustard seed is the smallest seed of all

Mustard seeds were the smallest seeds known to the original hearers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a mustard seed

This probably refers to the seed of the black mustard plant, which has tiny seeds that rapidly grow into very large plants. If there is a word for this plant in your language, you should use it. If not, you may need to substitute the name of another plant which has the same characteristics. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the smallest seed of all

That means the smallest of all the seeds that people plant.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
-

34:02

"But when **the mustard seed grows**, it becomes the largest of all of **the garden plants**, big enough that even the birds come and **rest in** its branches."

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

the mustard seed

See how you translated this term in [34:01](#).

grows

You may want to add: "into a mature plant."

the garden plants

This can also be translated as: "the plants that would be planted in a garden."

rest in

This may also be translated as: "sit on" or "perch on."

34:03

Telling another **story**, Jesus said, "**The kingdom of God is like yeast** that a woman mixes into some **bread dough** until **it spreads throughout the dough.**"

story

The story is in the form of a parable. See how you translated **story** in [34:01](#). (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of God is like yeast

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were yeast that is mixed into dough. (See: [Simile](#))

yeast

This can also be translated as: "leaven" or "the little bit of leaven." It is added to bread dough to make it rise. A little bit of yeast mixed into a large amount of dough makes the whole batch of dough rise. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bread dough

This is a mixture of flour and liquid that can be shaped and baked into bread. If you do not have words for dough or flour, you can borrow a word for flour or call it 'ground-up grain.'

it spreads throughout the dough

This could mean 'every part of the dough has yeast in it' or 'the yeast grows throughout all the dough.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)

34:04

“The kingdom of God is also like treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and wanted it very much. So he **buried it again**. He was so **filled with joy** that he went and sold everything he had **so he could buy that field where the treasure was.**”

General Information

Jesus told another story.

The kingdom of God is also like treasure

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were a hidden treasure in a field. (See: [Simile](#))

treasure

This means something that is very valuable.

buried it again

It is also possible to add: “so that no one else would find it.”

filled with joy

Other ways to say this are: “very happy” or “excited.”

so he could buy that field where the treasure was

The implied information is that the person buys the field to take possession of the hidden treasure. This can be clearly stated: “so he could buy that field to make the treasure his own.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
 - [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
-

34:05

“The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value. When **a pearl merchant** found it, he sold all that he had so he could buy it.”

General Information

Jesus continues with another story about the kingdom of God.

The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value

The kingdom of God is spoken of as if it were a perfect pearl that was worth a lot of money. (See: [Simile](#))

a perfect pearl

This means 'a pearl without any defects.'

a pearl

If pearls are unknown, this can be translated as: "a beautiful stone" or "a beautiful stone-like thing."

of great value

This could mean 'that was very valuable' or 'that was worth a lot of money.'

a pearl merchant

This could mean 'a pearl dealer' or 'a pearl trader.' This refers to a person whose business is buying and selling pearls.

Translation Words

- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
-

34:06

There were some people who thought God would accept them because they were doing good things. These people **despised others** who did not do those good things. So **Jesus told them this story**: "There were two men, both of whom went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a **tax collector**, and the other was a **religious leader**."

Jesus told them this story

Jesus told this story in the form of a parable. It may or may not refer to an event that actually happened. (See: [Parables](#))

story

See how you translated this term in [34:01](#).

despised others

This could mean 'considered other people to be inferior to them' or 'looked down on other people.'

a tax collector...a religious leader

Religious leaders thought that they themselves were the best examples of righteous good people, and they thought that tax collectors were the most unrighteous sinners. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [temple](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

- tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
 - Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
-

34:07

“The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector over there.’”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector over there.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “The religious leader prayed and thanked God that he was not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like the tax collector.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

The religious leader prayed like this

Other ways to say this are: “This is how the religious leader prayed” or “The religious leader prayed in this way.”

I am not a sinner like

This could mean ‘I am not sinful like’ or ‘I am righteous, not like.’

such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector

The Pharisees believed that tax collectors were as sinful as robbers, unrighteous people, and adulterers. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector who cheats people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

unjust men

This could mean ‘men who are not righteous’ or ‘people who do evil things’ or ‘law breakers.’

Translation Words

- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
 - God
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
 - tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
-

34:08

“For example, **I fast** two times every week and I give you **ten percent** of all the money and goods that I receive.”

General Information

Jesus continues to tell of the religious leader's prayer.

'For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "The religious leader said he fasted fast two times every week and gave God ten percent of all the money and goods that he received." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

I fast

The religious ruler believed that doing this would earn favor with God.

ten percent

This means one-tenth.

Translation Words

- [fast, fasting](#)
-

34:09

"But the tax collector **stood far away** from the religious leader. He **did not even look up to heaven**. Instead, **he pounded on his chest with his fist and prayed, 'God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.'**"

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

stood far away

This can also be translated as: "stood at a distance" or "stayed separate."

did not even look up to heaven

The word **up** indicates that people normally looked up to heaven when praying to God, but that this man did not because he was so ashamed of his sin.

he pounded on his chest with his fist

This could also be translated as: "because of his grief, he hit his chest with his fist" or "he pounded his chest in sorrow." If people would find this hard to understand because they beat their chest for other reasons, you could translate this as: "he showed his despair." (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “and prayed and begged God to be merciful to him because he was a sinner.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Translation Words

- tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
 - Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
 - heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
 - pray, prayer
 - God
 - mercy, merciful
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

34:10

Then Jesus said, “I tell you, God heard the tax collector’s prayer, and **declared him to be righteous** rather than the religious leader. God **will dishonor** everyone who is proud, but he **will honor** whoever **humbles himself**.”

declared him to be righteous

This could mean ‘considered him to be a righteous person.’ Even though the tax collector was a sinner, God was merciful to him because of his humility and repentance.

will dishonor

This could also be translated as: “will give a lower status to” or “will cause to not be important.” It could be translated figuratively as: “will bring down.”

will honor

This could mean ‘will give a higher position to.’

humbles himself

This could mean ‘chooses to behave in a humble way’ or ‘has a humble attitude about himself.’

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:31-46; Mark 4:26-34; Luke 13:18-21; 18:9-14

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- true, truth
- God
- tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
- pray, prayer

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
- humble, humbled, humility
- proud, pride, prideful

35. The Story of the Compassionate Father

35:00

The Story of the Compassionate Father

This title can also be translated as: "About a father who had compassion on his son" or "What happened when a father had compassion on his son?"

35:01

One day, Jesus was teaching many people who had gathered to hear him. These people were **tax collectors** and also other people who did not try to obey the Law of Moses.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

tax collectors

Tax collectors were considered to be the worst of sinners because often they stole money from people by collecting a higher tax than the government required and keeping the difference for themselves.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

35:02

Some religious leaders saw Jesus talking to these people as friends. So they began to tell each other that he was doing wrong. Jesus heard them talk, so he told them this **story**.

story

Jesus used this story to teach truths about God's kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here. (See: [Parables](#))

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

35:03

“There was a man who had two sons. The younger son **told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’** So the father divided his **property** between his two sons.”

General Information

Jesus tells the story.

There was a man

This introduces a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “told his father that he wanted his inheritance right away!” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

I want my inheritance now!

The son said this to emphasize that he was not willing to wait until after his father died in order to receive his inheritance. (See: [Exclamations](#))

my inheritance

This could be translated as: “the part of your wealth that will be rightfully mine when you die.”

property

This could mean ‘wealth’ or ‘possessions.’ This property would probably have included land, animals, and money.

Translation Words

- [son](#)
 - [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
-

35:04

“Soon the younger son gathered all that he had and went far away and **wasted his money in sinful living.**”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

wasted his money

This could mean ‘spent all his money without getting anything of value in exchange.’ In some languages it can be translated as: “threw his money away” or “ate all his money.”

sinful living

This could mean 'doing sinful things.'

Translation Words

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

35:05

"After that, **a severe famine occurred** in the land where the younger son was, and he had **no money to buy food**. So he took the only **job** he could find, **feeding pigs**. He was so miserable and hungry that he wanted to eat the pigs' food."

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

a severe famine occurred

This could mean 'there was very little food.' In some languages this might be translated as: "there was a severe famine."

no money to buy food

Because of the famine, food was very expensive, and he had already spent all of his money.

job

This refers to work that he would do for someone else in exchange for money. If this is not clear, this sentence could start with: "So in order to earn some money, he took the only job."

feeding pigs

This could mean 'giving food to pigs.' This would have been considered as one of the lowest jobs in society at this time. If your language has a certain word for low status jobs, use that word.

35:06

"Finally, the younger son **said to himself, 'What am I doing? All my father's servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be one of his servants.'**"

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

said to himself, 'What am I doing? All my father's servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be one of his servants.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "asked himself what he was doing! All his father's servants have plenty to eat, and yet he was there starving. He decided to go back to his father and ask to be one of his father's servants." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

What am I doing?

The son isn't really asking a question, so some languages will have to translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "Why am I living like this?" or "I should not be living like this!" or "It doesn't make sense for me to live like this."

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
-

35:07

"So the younger son started back towards his father's home. When he was **still far away**, his father saw him and **felt compassion** for him. He ran to his son and **hugged him and kissed him.**"

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

still far away

This can also be translated as: "within sight of his father's home, but still a distance away." The son was getting close to his father's house but was still far enough away that most people in the house would not have seen him. Make sure it does not sound like he was still in a different country.

felt compassion

This could mean 'felt deep love and pity.'

hugged him and kissed him

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to embrace or hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: "welcomed him affectionately" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [son](#)
-

35:08

“The son said, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am not worthy to be your son.’”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

said, ‘Father, I have sinned against God and against you. I am not worthy to be your son.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “told his father that he had sinned against God and against his father, and was not worthy to be his son.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

sinned against God and against you

This could be translated as: “sinned against God, and I have also sinned against you.”

I am not worthy

It is also possible to say: “So I am not worthy” or “As a result, I am not worthy.”

Translation Words

- son
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
-

35:09

“But his father told one of his servants, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my son! Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet. Then kill the best calf so we can have a feast and celebrate, because my son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now we have found him!’”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

servants, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my son! Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet. Then kill the best calf so we can have a feast and celebrate, because my son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now we have found him!’

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: “servants to go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on his son, and to put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet! He also told him to kill the best calf so they could have a feast and celebrate, because his son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now he had found him!” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Put a ring on his finger

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

put sandals on his feet

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals. However, in many cultures the modern equivalent would be 'shoes.' (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the best calf

This could also be translated as: "the fattest calf." This was the calf that had been fattened so that, when cooked, it would taste the best.

my son was dead, but now he is alive!

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. This could mean 'This is like my son was dead and is alive again!' or 'I grieved as if my son had died, but now I rejoice because it is as if he has come back to life!' The father is using this expression to show how happy he is that his son has come home. (See: [Exclamations](#), [Metaphor](#))

He was lost, but now we have found him!

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. This could mean 'This is like my son was lost and I have found him again!' or 'I grieved as if my son were lost, but now I rejoice because it is as if I have found him again!' The father is using this expression to show how happy he is that his son has come home. (See: [Exclamations](#), [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [son](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
-

35:10

"So the people began to celebrate. **Before long**, the older son came home from working in the field. He heard the music and dancing and wondered what was happening."

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

Before long

This can also be translated as: "Soon" or "After a little while."

35:11

“When the older son found out that they were celebrating because his brother had come home, he was very angry and would not go into the house. His father came out and begged him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

Translation Words

- [son](#)
 - [beg, beggar, needy](#)
-

35:12

“The older son said to his father, ‘**All these years I have worked faithfully for you!** I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me even **one small goat** so I could celebrate with my friends. But **this son of yours** has **wasted your money** doing sinful things. When he came home, you **killed the best calf** to celebrate!’”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

All these years I have worked faithfully for you!

The son said this to his father to emphasize that he thought his father was treating him unfairly. (See: [Exclamations](#))

one small goat

A small goat would have fed fewer people than the best calf, and would not be valued as much. The older brother is complaining that his father was treating the sinful younger son better than him.

this son of yours

This expression shows that the older son was angry. It shows his rejection of his younger brother and his disapproval of his father for welcoming back this wayward son. Other languages may also have an indirect way of communicating these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

wasted your money

This could mean ‘squandered the money that you gave him’ or ‘devoured your wealth.’ If possible, use an expression that shows the brother’s anger.

killed the best calf

This could mean ‘killed the best calf to eat at a feast.’

Translation Words

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

35:13

“The father answered, ‘My son, you are always with me, and everything I have is yours. But **it is right for us** to celebrate because **your brother was dead, but now is alive. He was lost, but now we have found him!**”

General Information

Jesus continues the story.

it is right for us

This could mean ‘it is the right thing for us to do’ or ‘it is proper for us.’

your brother

The father refers to his younger son as **your brother** to remind the older son of his relationship to the younger son and of how he should love his younger brother. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

was dead, but now is alive

See how you translated this in [35:09](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

He was lost, but now we have found him!

See how you translated this in [35:09](#). (See: [Exclamations](#), [Metaphor](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Luke 15

Translation Words

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- life, live, living, alive

36. The Transfiguration

36:00

The Transfiguration

This title can also be translated as: "About when the disciples saw Jesus change before them" or "What happened when the disciples saw Jesus change before them?"

36:01

One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, **James**, and John, with him. (The disciple named John was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves to pray.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

James

This is a different James than the one who wrote the Book of James in the Bible. To make this clear, some languages may need to use two slightly different names or to spell them differently.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [John \(the apostle\)](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
-

36:02

As Jesus was praying, **his face became as bright as the sun. His clothes became as white as light, whiter** than anyone on earth could make them.

his face became as bright as the sun

This simile emphasizes how bright Jesus' appearance became. (See: [Simile](#))

His clothes became as white as light

This simile emphasizes how white Jesus' clothes became. (See: [Simile](#))

whiter

This could mean 'more white.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - pray, prayer
-

36:03

Then Moses and the prophet Elijah **appeared**. These men had lived on the earth hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death, because he would soon die **in Jerusalem**.

appeared

It is also possible to say: "appeared out of nowhere." They suddenly were there.

in Jerusalem

Some languages may prefer to say: "in the city of Jerusalem."

Translation Words

- Moses
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Elijah
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - Jerusalem
-

36:04

As Moses and Elijah were talking with Jesus, Peter said to Jesus, "**It is good for us to be here**. Let us make three **shelters**, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." But Peter **did not know what he was saying**.

It is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether **us** refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

shelters

This can also be translated as: "lean-tos" or "garden huts" or "tents." It refers to small, individual, temporary shelters like the Jews made from tree branches during an annual Jewish holiday.

did not know what he was saying

This could mean 'was speaking without understanding what was happening' or 'spoke without thinking clearly because he was so excited.' This is background information about why Peter said what he did. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Moses](#)
 - [Elijah](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
-

36:05

As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down and surrounded them. Then they heard **a voice coming from the cloud. It said**, "This is **my Son** whom I love. I am pleased with him. **Listen to him.**" The three disciples were **terrified** and **fell on the ground**.

a voice coming from the cloud. It said

Here **a voice** is a metonym that refers to someone who spoke. This can also be translated as: "a voice spoke from the cloud saying" or "God spoke from the cloud and said." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information, Metonymy](#))

my Son

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Listen to him

This could be translated as: "He is the one you must listen to."

terrified

This could mean 'extremely scared.'

fell on the ground

This could mean 'quickly bowed to the ground' or 'immediately got down on the ground.' Make sure the translation of **fell** does not sound like an accident. They probably did this intentionally out of awe and fear.

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [love, beloved](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

36:06

Then Jesus **touched them** and **said, “Do not be afraid. Get up.”** When they looked around, **the only one still there was Jesus.**

touched them

This could mean ‘put his hand on them.’ Some languages may prefer to specify where he touched them. If so, this could be translated as: “he touched them on the shoulder” or “he put his hand on each one’s shoulder.”

said, “Do not be afraid. Get up.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “told them not to be afraid, and to get up.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Do not be afraid

This could also be translated as: “Stop being afraid.”

Get up

This could also be translated as: “Stand up” or “Please get up.” Make sure that it sounds like Jesus spoke this with kindness.

the only one still there was Jesus

It is also possible to add: “Moses and Elijah had left.”

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

36:07

Jesus and the three disciples went back down the mountain. Then Jesus said to them, “Do not tell anyone yet about what happened here. I will soon die and then come back to life. After that, you may tell people.”

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 17:1-9; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead

37:00

Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus made Lazarus alive again" or "How did Jesus make Lazarus alive again?"

37:01

There was a man named Lazarus. He had two sisters named Mary and Martha. They were all close friends of Jesus. One day someone told Jesus that Lazarus was very sick. When Jesus heard this, he said, "**This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying.** Instead, it will cause people to honor God."

There was a man named Lazarus. He had two sisters named Mary and Martha. They were all close friends of Jesus.

This introduces Lazarus and his sisters as new characters in the story, and also provides background information about their relationship to Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#), [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Mary

Jesus' mother was also named Mary. This was a different woman.

This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying

This can also be translated as: "The final result of this sickness will not be the death of Lazarus" or "Lazarus is sick, but death is not the final result of this sickness." Jesus' disciples probably thought this meant that Lazarus would not die. But Jesus knew that, although Lazarus would die from his sickness, he would live in the end. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Lazarus
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - glory, glorious, glorify
 - God
 - love, beloved
-

37:02

Jesus loved his friends, but he waited where he was for two days. After those two days he said to his disciples, "Let's go back to **Judea**." "But Teacher," the disciples answered, "**just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!**" Jesus said, "Our friend Lazarus **has fallen asleep**, and **I must wake him.**"

Jesus loved his friends

This is background information about Jesus' relationship to Lazarus and his sisters. (See: [Background Information](#))

but he waited where he was for two days

This could be translated as: "but he stayed where he was for two days, even though they wanted him to go and heal Lazarus."

just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!

The disciples said this to emphasize the great danger Jesus faced if he went to Judea. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Judea

This refers to the southern section of Israel, which was settled by the tribe of Judah. Some languages will prefer to say: "the region of Judea."

has fallen asleep

This is an idiom that means Lazarus has died. Translate this phrase with the normal word for **asleep** in your language. Although Jesus was using this word with a different meaning, the disciples did not understand that yet. (See: [Idiom](#))

I must wake him

Here **wake** is an idiom that means Jesus would make Lazarus alive again. Translate this phrase with the normal word for **wake** in your language. Although Jesus was using this word with a different meaning, the disciples did not understand that yet. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [teacher, Teacher](#)
 - [Lazarus](#)
-

37:03

Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if Lazarus is sleeping, then **he will get better.**" Then Jesus told them plainly, "Lazarus is dead. **I am glad** that I was not there, so that you may believe in me."

he will get better

The disciples intended this in the sense of: ‘there is no reason for us to go to him now, since he will get well.’

I am glad

This could be translated as: “I am happy” or “It is good that.” It does not mean he was happy that Lazarus died, but rather that he was happy that God was going to show how great he is.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [Lazarus](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

37:04

When Jesus arrived at Lazarus’ hometown, Lazarus had already been dead for four days. Martha went out to meet Jesus and said, “Master, **if only you had been here, my brother would not have died.** But I believe God **will give you whatever you ask from him.**”

When Jesus arrived at Lazarus’ hometown, Lazarus had already been dead for four days

This is background information about the setting and about what has happened before Jesus arrived. (See: [Background Information](#))

Martha

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

went out to meet Jesus

This could mean ‘went to meet Jesus as he was coming into the town.’

if only you had been here, my brother would not have died

Martha is stating a hypothetical situation—what could have happened if Jesus had not waited for Lazarus to die before he came. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

my brother would not have died

This could mean ‘you would have healed my brother and he would not have died’ or ‘you could have prevented my brother from dying.’

will give you whatever you ask from him

This could mean ‘will do whatever you ask him to do.’

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Lazarus](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [God](#)
-

37:05

Jesus replied, “**I am the Resurrection and the Life.** Whoever believes in me **will live, even though he dies.** Everyone who believes in me **will never die.** Do you believe this?” **Martha** answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, **the Son of God.**”

I am the Resurrection and the Life

This is one of several very powerful **I am **statements in which Jesus says something about his essential nature. In this one, Jesus indicates that he is the provider or source of resurrection and life. If possible, translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is his essential nature. This can also be translated as: “I am the one who resurrects people and causes them to live.”

will live, even though he dies.

This could mean ‘will live forever, even though he dies.’ The English word, **he** does not only refer to men. Women who believe in Jesus will also live forever.

will never die

This can also be translated as: “will live forever.”

Martha

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [resurrection](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
-

37:06

Then **Mary** arrived. She **fell at the feet of Jesus** and said, “Master, **if only you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the tomb. Come and see.” Then Jesus wept.

Mary

This was the same woman as in [37:01](#), not the mother of Jesus.

fell at the feet of Jesus

This could mean ‘knelt down at Jesus’ feet’ as a sign of respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

if only you had been here, my brother would not have died

Mary is stating a hypothetical situation—what could have happened if Jesus had not waited for Lazarus to die before he came. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

my brother would not have died

This could mean ‘you could have kept my brother from dying’ or ‘you could have prevented my brother’s death’ or ‘my brother would still be alive.’

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [Lazarus](#)
 - [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
-

37:07

The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening. When Jesus arrived at the tomb, **he told them, “Roll the stone away.”** But **Martha** said, “**He has been dead for four days.** There will be a bad smell.”

The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening

This is background information about the tomb where they had buried Lazarus. (See: [Background Information](#))

he told them, “Roll the stone away.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “he told them to roll the stone away.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he told them

This could mean ‘he told the men there.’ He was probably not telling Mary and Martha to roll the stone away.

Roll the stone away

Some languages may prefer to say: "Roll the stone away from the opening of the tomb."

Martha

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

He has been dead for four days

This could also be translated as: "He died four days ago and his body is lying there."

Translation Words

- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
-

37:08

Jesus answered, "**Did I not tell you that you would see God's power if you believe in me?**" So they **rolled the stone away**.

Did I not tell you that you would see God's power if you believe in me?

This could mean 'Remember that I told you that you would see God's power if you believe in me.' Jesus is not asking this question in order to get an answer, so some languages should translate this as a command. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

see God's power

This could mean 'see the power of God displayed' or 'see God show how powerful he is.'

rolled the stone away

Some languages should say: "rolled the stone away from the opening of the tomb."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

37:09

Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for **hearing me**. I know you always listen to me, but I say this in order to help all these people standing here, so that they will believe you sent me." Then Jesus shouted, "**Lazarus, come out!**"

Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

hearing me

This could mean 'listening to me.' It may be helpful to add: "as I pray to you" or "when I talk to you."

Lazarus, come out!

Jesus used this exclamation as a strong command to Lazarus. (See: [Exclamations](#))

come out

Some languages may prefer to say: "come out of the tomb."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Lazarus](#)
-

37:10

So **Lazarus came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes.** Jesus told them, "Help him take off those grave clothes and release him!" **Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.**

Lazarus came out!

This exclamation emphasizes the shocking fact that Lazarus, who had been dead, walked out of the tomb. Some languages should say: "Lazarus came out of the tomb!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

He was still wrapped in grave clothes

This background information about Lazarus wearing grave clothes makes clear that Lazarus went directly from being dead to walking out of the tomb at Jesus' command. (See: [Background Information, Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

grave clothes

This could mean 'burial clothes.' This can also be translated as: "burial bandages" or "strips of cloth."

Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle

This sentence tells us what happened after Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead. (See: [Background Information](#))

because of this miracle

This could mean 'because God had done this amazing miracle' or 'because Jesus had made Lazarus come alive again.'

Translation Words

- Lazarus
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Jew, Jewish
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - miracle, wonder, sign
-

37:11

But the religious leaders of the Jews **envied** Jesus, so they **gathered together** to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.

envied

This could mean 'were envious of Jesus' power and popularity' or 'envious that so many Jews were believing in Jesus.'

gathered together

This could mean 'met together' or 'joined together.' This was a not a casual meeting, but a meeting for a specific purpose—to plan how to kill Jesus.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: John 11:1-46

Translation Words

- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
- Jew, Jewish
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Lazarus

38. Jesus Is Betrayed

38:00

Jesus Is Betrayed

This title can also be translated as: "About when Judas betrayed Jesus" or "How did Judas betray Jesus?"

38:01

Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt **many centuries earlier. About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.**

Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.

This is background information about the Jewish Passover. (See: [Background Information](#))

many centuries earlier

This could mean 'hundreds of years earlier' or 'a very long time before.'

About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.

This is background information about why Jesus was in Jerusalem in the Passover, and what would happen to him there. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- Jew, Jewish
 - Passover
 - God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - disciple
 - Jerusalem
-

38:02

One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. Judas was **in charge of the apostles' moneybag, but he often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders. He offered to betray Jesus by identifying**

him to the authorities in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders did not accept that Jesus was the Messiah. He knew that they wanted to kill him.

One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. Judas was in charge of the apostles' moneybag, but he often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders. He offered to betray Jesus by identifying him to the authorities in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders did not accept that Jesus was the Messiah. He knew that they wanted to kill him.

This is background information about Judas and his arrangement to betray Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

in charge of the apostles' moneybag

This could mean 'responsible to hold the apostles' money' or 'responsible to hold the bag that had the disciples' money in it and to distribute funds from it.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [Judas Iscariot](#)
 - [apostle, apostleship](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [betray, betrayer](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
-

38:03

The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas 30 silver coins to betray Jesus by handing him over to them. This happened just as the prophets said it would. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.

The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas 30 silver coins to betray Jesus by handing him over to them. This happened just as the prophets said it would. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.

This is background information about the money Judas received to betray Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

30 silver coins

Each of these coins were worth about four days' wages.

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
- [high priest, chief priests](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

38:04

In Jerusalem, Jesus **celebrated** the Passover with his disciples. During the Passover meal, Jesus **took some bread** and **broke it**. He said, "Take and eat this. **This is my body**, which I will give for you. **Do this to remember me.**" In this way, Jesus said that he would die for them, that he would sacrifice his body for them.

celebrated

This could mean 'was celebrating.'

took some bread

This could be translated as: "picked up a piece of bread" or "picked up a flat loaf of bread."

broke it

This means that he broke the bread into pieces for the people to eat. Alternate translation: "broke it into pieces" or "ripped it" or "tore it." He may have divided it into many pieces or he may have divided it into two pieces and given them to the apostles to divide among themselves. If possible, use an expression that would apply to either situation. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

This is my body

Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus' body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally. Possible meanings are 1. "This bread is my body" and 2. "This bread represents my body." (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Do this to remember me

This could mean 'Do this as a way to remind yourselves of what I am doing for you.' Jesus was referring to his death, which would happen soon.

Translation Words

- [Jerusalem](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Passover](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
-

38:05

Then Jesus picked up a cup of wine and said, "**Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant** that **I will pour out** so that God will forgive your sins. Do what I am doing now, to **remember me** every time you drink it."

Drink this

This could mean 'Drink what is in this cup' or 'Drink from this cup.' The drink in the cup was made from grapes so that it had a deep red color.

It is my blood

Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus' blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

blood of the New Covenant

This could be translated as: "blood that makes the New Covenant possible" or "blood that is the basis for the New Covenant."

I will pour out

This could be translated as: "I will bleed out."

remember me

This could mean 'celebrate me' or 'commemorate me.' It could also be translated as: "especially focus on me" or "remind you of me."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [blood](#)
 - [covenant](#)
 - [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
-

38:06

Then Jesus **said to the disciples, "One of you will betray me."** The disciples were shocked, and asked who would do such a thing. Jesus **said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the betrayer."** Then he gave the bread to Judas.

said to the disciples, "One of you will betray me."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told his disciples that one of them would betray him." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the betrayer."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "said that the person to whom he would give the piece of bread was the betrayer." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

give this piece of bread

This could mean 'hand this piece of bread.'

is the betrayer

This could also be translated as: “will betray me” or “is the one who will betray me.”

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - disciple
 - betray, betrayer
 - Judas Iscariot
-

38:07

After Judas took the bread, **Satan entered into him. Judas left and went** to help the Jewish leaders arrest Jesus. It was nighttime.

Satan entered into him.

This could mean ‘Satan went into him’ or ‘Satan took control of him.’

Judas left and went

Some languages may prefer to say: “Judas left the meal and went” or “Judas left the room and went outside.”

Translation Words

- Judas Iscariot
 - Satan, devil, evil one
 - Jew, Jewish
-

38:08

After the meal, Jesus and his disciples walked to the **Mount of Olives**. Jesus said, “You will all **abandon me** tonight. **It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.’”**

Mount of Olives

This is the name of a hill covered with olive trees, just outside the walls of the city of Jerusalem. It can also be translated as: “Olive Tree Hill.”

abandon me

This could mean ‘desert me’ or ‘leave me.’

It is written

This could mean 'It is written in God's word' or 'It is written in the scriptures' or 'One of God's prophets wrote.' It is also possible to say: "What is written will happen" or "It will be like what is written." This prophecy refers to Jesus' death and his followers' desertion. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I will strike

This could mean 'I will kill.' Here **I** refers to God. It is implied that God will cause or allow people to harm and kill Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the shepherd and all the sheep

Do not use Jesus' name in this quote because the prophet who first wrote it would not have known the shepherd's name. Also, do not refer to the sheep being the disciples. It is best to use words that mean **shepherd** and **sheep** in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

all the sheep will be scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will scatter all the sheep of the flock" or "the sheep of the flock will run off in all directions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [shepherd, chief shepherd](#)
 - [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
-

38:09

Peter **replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!"** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants **to have all of you**, but I have prayed for you, Peter, **that your faith will not fail**. Even so, tonight, **before the rooster crows**, you will deny three times that you even know me."

replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!"

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "replied that even if all the others abandoned Jesus, he would not!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!

Peter said this to emphasize that he would never abandon Jesus. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Even if all the others abandon you

Peter is stating a hypothetical situation—the other disciples might abandon Jesus. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

abandon you

Check to see how you translated this in [38:08](#).

I will not

This is an ellipse. The missing information can be stated: “replied, “Even if all the others abandon you, I will not abandon you” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

to have all of you

This could mean ‘to completely control you’ or ‘to get you to serve him completely.’ The word **you** is plural in this phrase. All of the words **you** and **your** that follow are singular.

that your faith will not fail

This could mean ‘that you will not stop believing in me.’

before the rooster crows

Roosters often crow about the time the sun comes up, so the hearers might have understood these words as a metonym for the sun coming up. However, the actual crowing of a rooster is an important part of the story later on, so keep the word **rooster** in the translation. Alternate translation: “Before the rooster crows at dawn tomorrow” or “before the rooster crows tomorrow morning.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [pray, prayer](#)
 - [faith](#)
-

38:10

Peter then **said to Jesus, “Even if I must die, I will never deny you!”** All the other disciples said the same thing.

said to Jesus, “Even if I must die, I will never deny you!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “said to Jesus that even if he had to die, he would never deny Jesus!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

deny you

This could mean ‘deny that I know you’ or ‘deny that I am your disciple’ or ‘disown you.’

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

38:11

Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his disciples to pray that **they would not enter into temptation.** Then Jesus went to pray **by himself.**

Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a place called Gethsemane

This could be translated as: “a nearby place called Gethsemane” or “a place called Gethsemane at the foot of the Mount of Olives.”

they would not enter into temptation

This could be translated as: “they would not be tempted” or “Satan would not tempt them.”

by himself

This could be translated as: “alone.”

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [pray, prayer](#)
 - [tempt, temptation](#)
-

38:12

Jesus prayed three times, **“My Father, if it is possible,** please let me not have to **drink this cup of suffering.** But if there is no other way for people’s sins to be forgiven, then **let your will be done.**” Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an angel to strengthen him.

My Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

if it is possible

This means ‘if God would allow it to happen.’ Alternate translation: “if you will allow it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

drink this cup of suffering

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. Alternate translation: “go through this suffering” or “suffer what is about to happen” or “endure this suffering.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

let your will be done

This expression means 'do what you have planned' or 'do what needs to be done.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - pray, prayer
 - God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
 - suffer, suffering
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
 - blood
 - God
 - angel, archangel
-

38:13

After each time of prayer, Jesus came back to his disciples, but they were asleep. When he returned the third time, Jesus **said, "Wake up! My betrayer is here."**

After each time of prayer

This could mean 'Every time Jesus prayed that prayer.' This refers to the three times he prayed, as mentioned in [38:12](#).

said, "Wake up! My betrayer is here."

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: "told them to wake up, for his betrayer was there!" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words

- pray, prayer
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - disciple
 - betray, betrayer
-

38:14

Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs. Judas **came to** Jesus and said, "**Greetings**, Teacher," and **kissed him**. He did this to show the Jewish leaders the man to arrest. Then Jesus said, "Judas, **are you betraying me with a kiss?**"

Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs

This is background information about the people who came with Judas. (See: [Background Information](#))

came to

Some languages may prefer to say: "went to."

Greetings

This can also be translated as: "Hello" or "Peace" or "Good evening."

kissed him

Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas kissed Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are you betraying me with a kiss?

This could mean 'are you really going to betray me with a kiss?' Jesus is not looking for an answer to this question, so some languages would translate it as a statement, such as: "you are betraying me by kissing me!" or "you make your betrayal even worse by kissing me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- [Judas Iscariot](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [teacher, Teacher](#)
 - [betray, betrayer](#)
-

38:15

As the soldiers were seizing Jesus, Peter **pulled out his sword** and cut off the ear of a servant of the high priest. But Jesus said, "Put the sword away! I could ask **the Father** for an army of angels to defend me, but **I must obey my Father.**" Jesus healed the man's ear. Then all the disciples ran away.

pulled out his sword

This could mean 'pulled out his sword from the place where he was carrying it.'

the Father...my Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

I must obey my Father

This could mean 'I won't do that because I must obey my Father's will and allow myself to be arrested.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 26:14-56; Mark 14:10-50; Luke 22:1-53; John 18:1-11

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- high priest, chief priests
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- angel, archangel
- obey, obedient
- cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- disciple

39. Jesus Is Put on Trial

39:00

Jesus Is Put on Trial

This title can also be translated as: "About when the Jews judged Jesus" or "What happened when the Jews judged Jesus?"

39:01

It was now the middle of the night. The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the high priest because he wanted **to question Jesus**. Peter was following far behind them. When the soldiers took Jesus into the house, Peter stayed outside and warmed himself by a fire.

It was now the middle of the night

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the middle of the night

This expression means 'halfway through the night' or 'very late at night.'

to question Jesus

This could mean 'to ask Jesus questions to try to find something they could accuse Jesus of doing wrong.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [high priest, chief priests](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
-

39:02

Inside the house, the Jewish leaders **put Jesus on trial**. They brought many false witnesses who **lied about him**. However, **their statements did not agree with each other**, so the Jewish leaders could not prove **he was guilty of anything**. Jesus did not say anything.

put Jesus on trial

This could be translated as: "had a formal meeting to accuse Jesus of doing something wrong." Usually a trial is held to find out if someone is innocent or guilty of a certain crime. In this case, the leaders were determined to have Jesus found guilty.

lied about him

This could mean 'told lies about him' or 'falsely accused him of doing something wrong.'

their statements did not agree with each other

This could be translated as: “they said things about Jesus that were very different from each other” or “the witnesses said things about Jesus that contradicted each other.”

he was guilty of anything

This could mean ‘that he had done anything wrong.’

Translation Words

- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
 - guilt, guilty
-

39:03

Finally, the high priest looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, **the Son of the living God?**”

Finally

This could mean ‘After they were unable to find any evidence against him’ or ‘After they were unable to prove that he was guilty.’

the Son of the living God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- high priest, chief priests
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Christ, Messiah
 - Son of God, the Son
-

39:04

Jesus said, “**I am**, and you will see me **seated with God and coming from heaven.**” The high priest **tore his clothes because he was angry** at what Jesus said. He shouted to the other leaders, “**We do not need any more witnesses to tell us what this man has done! You yourselves** have heard him say that he is **the Son of God. What is your decision about him?**”

I am

This could mean ‘I am as you said’ or ‘I am the Messiah and the Son of God.’ **I am** is also the name of God (See: [09:14](#)). By saying simply **I am**, Jesus was also saying that he is God. If possible, translate this so that people will see a similarity between Jesus’ answer and the name of God.

seated with God

This could be translated as: “reigning with God.” Because God is the ruler over all, people talk about him as sitting on a throne in heaven. By saying that he would be seated with God, Jesus claimed that he had authority to rule with the Father.

seated with God and coming from heaven

This could be translated as: “sitting beside God and then coming from heaven.”

tore his clothes because he was angry

The Jews would tear their clothes to show grief or anger. If tearing the clothes means something else in your language, you may want to substitute a phrase such as “he was extremely angry.” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

We do not need any more witnesses to tell us what this man has done!

The high priest said this to emphasize the he thought they had already proved that Jesus was guilty of blasphemy. (See: [Exclamations](#))

You yourselves

These pronouns are plural, and refer to all the members of the council. (See: [Pronouns](#))

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

What is your decision about him?

This could mean ‘Tell us what have you decided: Is he innocent or guilty?’ The chief priest wanted the religious leaders to condemn Jesus for claiming to be equal with God.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [high priest, chief priests](#)
- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [Son of God, the Son](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

39:05

The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “**He deserves to die!**” Then **they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him**, hit him, and mocked him.

He deserves to die!

The Jewish leaders said this to emphasize how angry they were with Jesus. (See: [Exclamations](#))

they blindfolded Jesus

You could translate this as: “they covered Jesus’ eyes so that he could not see.”

spit on him

This could also be translated as: “spit on him to insult him” or “spit on him in order to say that he was worthless.” This was a way of showing contempt for someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [high priest, chief priests](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
-

39:06

As for Peter, he was waiting outside the house. A servant girl saw him. She said to him, “**You also were with Jesus!**” Peter **denied it**. Later, another girl said the same thing, and **Peter denied it again**. Finally, some people said, “**We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from Galilee.**”

You also were with Jesus!

The servant girl said this to accuse Peter of being a criminal. (See: [Exclamations](#))

denied it

This can be translated as: “said that it was not true” or “said that he was not with Jesus” or “said, ‘No. That is not true.’”

Peter denied it again

This could be translated as: “Peter denied knowing Jesus a second time” or “again Peter said he had not been with Jesus.”

We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from Galilee

The servant girl could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he talked. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are from Galilee

This could also be translated as: “are Galileans.” The people could tell from the way Jesus and Peter talked that they came from the region of Galilee.

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Galilee, Galilean
-

39:07

Then Peter said, “**May God curse me if I know this man!**” Immediately after Peter swore like this, **a rooster crowed**. Jesus turned around and looked at Peter.

May God curse me if I know this man!

This is a curse that means ‘May God cause harm to me if what you say is true!’ or ‘May God punish me if I am lying to you!’ In this way Peter was saying very strongly that he did not know Jesus. He also referred to Jesus as **this man** to make it sound like he did not know him. (See: [Exclamations](#))

a rooster crowed

Crowed is the loud sound that a rooster makes. Compare how you translated this in [38:09](#).

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - God
 - curse, cursed, cursing
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

39:08

Peter went away and **cried bitterly**. At the same time, Judas, **the one who had betrayed Jesus**, saw that the Jewish leaders **had condemned Jesus to die**. Judas became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

cried bitterly

This could mean ‘cried, feeling deep sorrow’ or ‘cried, feeling deep regret.’

the one who had betrayed Jesus

This could mean ‘who had helped the leaders arrest Jesus.’

had condemned Jesus to die

This could mean ‘had said that Jesus was guilty and must die.’

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- Judas Iscariot
- betray, betrayer
- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

39:09

Now Pilate was the governor of Judea. **He worked for Rome.** The Jewish leaders brought Jesus to him. They wanted Pilate to **condemn Jesus and kill him.** Pilate **asked Jesus, “Are you the king of the Jews?”**

He worked for Rome

The Roman government had appointed Pilate to govern the region of Judea in Israel.

condemn Jesus and kill him

As governor, Pilate had the authority to condemn Jesus to death and to give approval for his crucifixion, or he could set him free. The Jewish religious leaders did not have the authority to have someone killed.

asked Jesus, “Are you the king of the Jews?”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “asked Jesus if he was the king of the Jews.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Pilate](#)
 - [Rome, Roman](#)
 - [King of the Jews](#)
-

39:10

Jesus answered, “You have said the truth. But **my kingdom is not here on earth.** If it were, **my servants would fight for me.** I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth **listens to me.**” Pilate asked, “**What is truth?**”

my kingdom is not here on earth

This could mean ‘my kingdom is not like earthly kingdoms.’

my servants would fight for me

This could mean ‘my disciples would fight to protect me’ so that I could establish my kingdom.

listens to me

This could be translated as: “hears my teaching and obeys me.” It includes not just hearing Jesus’ words, but also doing what he says.

What is truth?

This remark appears in the form of a question to reflect Pilate's belief that no one really knows what truth is. Alternate translation: "Can anyone know what is true?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
 - kingdom
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - true, truth
 - God
 - love, beloved
 - Pilate
-

39:11

After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I cannot find any reason that this man deserves to die." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "**He is not guilty** of doing anything wrong." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not guilty!"

He is not guilty

This could mean 'He has done nothing wrong!'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Pilate
 - guilt, guilty
 - Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
 - crucify, crucified
-

39:12

Pilate became afraid that the crowd would **begin to riot**, so **he agreed to have** his soldiers crucify Jesus. The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and **put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him**. Then they mocked him by saying, "**Look, the King of the Jews!**"

begin to riot

This could mean 'start doing violent things in their anger.'

he agreed to have

Pilate did not want to kill Jesus because he believed that Jesus was innocent. But he was forced to tell his soldiers to crucify Jesus because of his fear of the crowd. If possible, translate this phrase in a way that shows his reluctance.

put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him

They put the robe and crown on Jesus to mock him. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

a royal robe

This could mean 'a robe like a king's robe.' This robe had a bright color, so it looked like the kind of robe that a king would wear.

a crown made of thorns

This could mean 'a ring woven from thorns.' A king would wear a crown of gold.

Look, the King of the Jews!

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus "King of the Jews," but they did not really believe he was a king. And yet what they were saying was true. (See: [Irony](#), [Exclamations](#))

Look

This could mean 'Look at' or 'Here is.'

the King of the Jews

Since the soldiers were mocking Jesus, this could be translated as: "the so-called King of the Jews."

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 26:57-27:26; Mark 14:53-15:15; Luke 22:54-23:25; John 18:12-19:16

Translation Words

- [Pilate](#)
- [crucify, crucified](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Rome, Roman](#)
- [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)

40. Jesus Is Crucified

40:00

Jesus Is Crucified

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus died on a cross" or "What happened when Jesus died on a cross?"

40:01

After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.

After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

led him away

This could mean 'forced him to go with them.' This could also be translated as: "took him away."

to crucify him

This could mean 'to kill him on a cross.'

Translation Words

- [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [crucify, crucified](#)
 - [cross](#)
-

40:02

The soldiers brought Jesus to **a place called 'the Skull'** and nailed his hands and feet to the cross. But Jesus said, "**Father, forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing.**" They also put a sign on the cross above his head. It said, "King of the Jews." This is what Pilate had told them to write.

a place called 'the Skull'

This can be stated in active form: "a place that people called 'the Skull'" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the Skull

This is a small escarpment near Jerusalem with a rocky, white face which looks somewhat like a skull.

Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing

This could mean 'they do not understand the meaning of what they are doing, so please forgive them.' The soldiers thought Jesus was only a criminal who deserved to die. They did not understand that he was the Son of God. Alternate translation: "for they do not really know whom they are crucifying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [cross](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
 - [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
 - [Pilate](#)
 - [King of the Jews](#)
-

40:03

Then **the soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing**. When they did this, **they fulfilled a prophecy that said**, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."

the soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing

This could mean 'played a game of chance to win Jesus' clothes.' We do not know how they did this, but in some cultures it could be translated as: "tossed stones on the ground to win Jesus' clothing" or "chose sticks to decide who could take Jesus' clothes." The winner received his clothing. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they fulfilled a prophecy that said

This could mean 'they did what the scriptures had long ago predicted would happen to the Messiah' or 'they did what a prophet wrote long ago.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-

40:04

There were also **two robbers** whom the soldiers crucified at the same time, putting them on either side of Jesus. One of the robbers mocked Jesus, but the other said to him, "**Do you not fear that God will punish you? We are guilty of doing many bad things, but this man is**

innocent. Then he said to Jesus, **“Please remember me** when you become king **in your kingdom.**” Jesus answered him, “Today you will be with me in **Paradise.**”

two robbers

This could also be translated as: “two bandits.” This refers to criminals who used force or violence to steal things.

Do you not fear that God will punish you?

The robber does not expect an answer to this question; it is a way that some languages use to make a strong statement. If your language does not use questions in this way, then translate this as: “You should fear God!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

We are guilty of doing many bad things, but this man is innocent

This could be translated as: “You and I have done evil things and deserve to die, but this man, Jesus, has done nothing wrong and does not deserve to die.”

We are guilty

We here includes both robbers, but does not include Jesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

this man

This phrase refers to Jesus.

Please remember me

This could mean ‘Please accept me’ or ‘Please welcome me’ or ‘Please allow me to be with you.’ **Remember** here does not mean to recall something after forgetting it. Translate this in a way that communicates a humble request.

in your kingdom

This is a metonym that refers to the time when Jesus will rule. Alternate translation: “when you establish your kingdom” or “when you are ruling as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Paradise

This is another name for ‘heaven.’

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [crucify, crucified](#)
 - [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [guilt, guilty](#)
 - [innocent](#)
 - [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
-

40:05

The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “**If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself!** Then we will **believe you.**”

If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself!

The people were mocking Jesus. Alternate translation: “We do not believe you are the King of the Jews, but if you are” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If you are the Son of God

The people were mocking Jesus, but he truly was the Son of God. (See: [Hypothetical Situations, Irony](#))

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

believe you

This could mean ‘believe in you’ or ‘believe that you are the Messiah.’

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [cross](#)
 - [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

40:06

Then the sky over the whole region became completely dark, even though it was the middle of the day. It became dark at noon and stayed dark for three hours.

40:07

Then Jesus cried out, “**It is finished! Father, I am giving my spirit into your hands.**” Then he **bowled his head** and **gave up his spirit**. When he died, there was an earthquake. **In the Temple, the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God was torn in two** from the top to the bottom.

It is finished!

This could also be translated as: "It is completed" or "I have finished it" or "I have completed the work." This means that Jesus' work of salvation was complete.

Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

I am giving my spirit into your hands

This statement is a metonym that refers to God's care. Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care" or "I give my spirit to you, knowing you will care for it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

bowed his head

This could mean 'lowered his head.'

gave up his spirit

This is a polite way to say that Jesus died. This could be translated as: "gave up his spirit to God" or "released his spirit to God and died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

In the Temple, the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God was torn in two

This can be stated in active form: "God tore in two the large curtain in the Temple that separated the people from his presence" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the large curtain

This was a large, strong fabric hung in the Temple. It was like a wall separating one room from another. It can also be translated as: "The thick curtain" or "The hanging fabric" or "The screen."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
 - [spirit, spiritual](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [temple](#)
-

40:08

Through his death, Jesus **opened the way** for people to **come to God**. When a soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that had happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was innocent. He was **the Son of God.**"

Through his death

This could mean 'By means of his death' or 'By dying.'

opened the way

This could mean 'made it possible.'

come to God

This could mean 'come near to God' or 'go near to God' or 'approach God' or 'know God personally.' The tearing of the curtain showed that the barrier between God and people had been removed.

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words

- die, dead, deadly, death,
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
 - innocent
 - Son of God, the Son
-

40:09

Then two Jewish leaders named Joseph and Nicodemus came and asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They believed that Jesus was the Messiah. They wrapped his body in cloth, took it to a tomb cut out of rock and placed it inside. Then they rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the opening.

Then two Jewish leaders named Joseph and Nicodemus came

This introduces two new characters. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Joseph

This was not Mary's husband. It was another man named Joseph.

They believed that Jesus was the Messiah

This is background information about two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah. (See: [Background Information](#))

asked Pilate for Jesus' body

This could mean 'asked Pilate to permit them to take Jesus' body down from the cross.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 27:27-61; Mark 15:16-47; Luke 23:26-56; John 19:17-42

Translation Words

- Jewish authorities, Jewish leader
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Christ, Messiah
- Pilate
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead

41:00

God Raises Jesus from the Dead

This title can also be translated as: "About how God made Jesus alive again" or "How did God make Jesus alive again?"

41:01

After the soldiers crucified Jesus, the Jewish leaders said to Pilate, "**That liar, Jesus, said** he would **rise from the dead** after three days. Someone must guard the tomb to make sure that his disciples do not steal the body. **If they do, they will say he has risen from the dead.**"

After the soldiers crucified Jesus

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequence of events. The Jewish leaders spoke to Pilate after he had had Jesus crucified. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

That liar, Jesus, said

This could also be translated as: "That man, Jesus, lied and said." They refused to believe that Jesus told the truth about being the Son of God.

rise from the dead

This could mean 'come back to life' or 'become alive again.'

If they do, they will say he has risen from the dead

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. The Jewish leaders thought that the disciples would only be able to say Jesus had risen from the dead if they were able to steal his body. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

Translation Words

- [crucify, crucified](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [Pilate](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
 - [disciple](#)
-

41:02

Pilate said, “Take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as you can.” So they placed a **seal on the stone** at the entrance of the tomb. They also put soldiers there to make sure no one could steal the body.

Pilate said, “Take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as you can.”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “Pilate told them to take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as they could.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

they placed

This could mean ‘the religious leaders and the soldiers placed.’

a seal on the stone

They put a soft material like clay or wax between the stone and the tomb and marked it with an official seal. If anyone moved the stone, the material would break and show that someone had entered the tomb. This could also be translated as: “a mark on the stone to forbid people from moving it.” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [Pilate](#)
 - [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
-

41:03

The day after Jesus died was a Sabbath day. **No one could work on the Sabbath day**, so no friends of Jesus went to his tomb. But on the day after the Sabbath, very early in the morning, several women got ready to go to Jesus’ tomb. They wanted to **put more spices on his body**.

No one could work on the Sabbath day

The Sabbath day rules did not permit a Jew to walk very far or to do any other kind of work.

put more spices on his body

It was the custom of the Jews to wash the body and then wrap it with strong, pleasant smelling spices to prevent the dead body from smelling bad so quickly. This was also a sign of honor and devotion. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

spices

This refers to sweet-smelling spices that were placed on a dead body to cover the bad smell. This can also be translated as: “sweet-smelling spices” or “sweet-smelling oils” or “sweet-smelling plants.”

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

- Sabbath
 - Jew, Jewish
 - grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
-

41:04

Before the women arrived, there was a great earthquake at the tomb. An angel came from heaven. He rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. This angel **was shining as brightly as lightning**. The soldiers at the tomb saw him. They were so terrified that they **fell to the ground like dead men**.

Before the women arrived, there was a great earthquake at the tomb

The connecting word **Before** introduces a sequential clause. First there was the earthquake and appearance of the angel, and then the women arrived at the tomb. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

there was a great earthquake

This could also be translated as: “there was a violent earthquake” or “there was a forceful shaking of the ground.” Some languages may prefer to reword this as: “the ground began to shake violently.” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

was shining as brightly as lightning

This could mean ‘whose appearance was as bright as lightning.’

fell to the ground like dead men

This is a simile that means the soldiers fell down and did not move, just like dead men do not move. They probably had fainted from fright. To make this clear, this could be translated as: “suddenly fell to the ground and did not move.” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words

- angel, archangel
 - heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
 - grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

41:05

When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. **He has risen from the dead**, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. **His body was not there!**

When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them

The word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. The two events happened at the same time, the women arrived at the tomb and the angel spoke to them. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

Do not be afraid

This could mean 'Stop being afraid.' An angel shining like lightning was a frightening sight!

He has risen from the dead

This could be translated as: "He has come back to life."

His body was not there!

This exclamation emphasizes how surprised they were that the body of Jesus was no longer in the tomb. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
-

41:06

Then the angel told the women, **"Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.'"**

"Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.'"

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "Go and tell the disciples that Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Go and tell the disciples

This is a command that the angel is giving to the women.

from the dead

This could mean 'from among all those who have died.' This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again. (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

he will go to Galilee ahead of you

This could mean 'he will meet you in Galilee' or 'he will be in Galilee when you get there.' **You** here is plural, including the apostles and other disciples. (See: [Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)

- die, dead, deadly, death,
 - Galilee, Galilean
-

41:07

The women were amazed and very joyful. They ran to tell the disciples **the good news**.

the good news

This can also be translated as: "the good news that Jesus was alive again." This good news refers to the fact that Jesus had risen from the dead.

Translation Words

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
 - disciple
-

41:08

As the women were on their way to tell the disciples the good news, Jesus appeared to them. They **bowed down at his feet**. Then Jesus said, "**Do not be afraid. Go and tell my disciples** to go to Galilee. They **will see me** there."

Do not be afraid. Go and tell my disciples

These are commands that Jesus is giving to the women.

bowed down at his feet

They did this symbolic action to honor Jesus as they would expect to do in the presence of a king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

will see me

This could mean 'will meet me' or 'can meet with me.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 27:62-28:15; Mark 16:1-11; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-18

Translation Words

- disciple
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- prostrate, worship
- Galilee, Galilean

42. Jesus Returns to Heaven

42:00

Jesus Returns to Heaven

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus went back to heaven" or "How did Jesus go back to heaven?"

42:01

On the day that God raised Jesus from the dead, two of his disciples were going to a nearby town. As they walked, they talked about what had happened to Jesus. **They had hoped that he was the Messiah, but then he was killed.** Now the women said he was alive again. They did not know what to believe.

They had hoped that he was the Messiah, but then he was killed

This connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. They thought the Messiah would reign as king of Israel. They did not expect him to die so they could not reconcile Jesus being Messiah with Jesus being crucified. His death was in contrast to their expectations for the Messiah. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

42:02

Jesus approached them and started walking with them, but they did not recognize him. He asked what they were talking about. They told him about **all the things that had happened** to Jesus during the previous few days. They thought they were talking to a foreigner who did not know what had happened in Jerusalem.

Jesus approached them and started walking with them, but they did not recognize him

The connecting word **but** indicates a contrast relationship. They knew Jesus well so you would expect them to recognize him, but they did not. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

did not recognize him

This could mean 'did not know that it was Jesus.'

all the things that had happened

This refers to the teaching and miracles of Jesus, his death, and the reports of his resurrection.

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Jerusalem
-

42:03

Then Jesus explained to them what God's word said about the Messiah. Long ago, prophets had said that evil men would make the Messiah suffer and die. But the prophets also said he would rise again **on the third day**.

on the third day

Some languages may prefer to say: "on the third day after his death."

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - Christ, Messiah
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - suffer, suffering
 - raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
-

42:04

When they arrived at the town where the two men wanted to stay, **it was almost evening**. They invited Jesus to stay with them, so he went into a house with them. They sat down to eat their evening meal. Jesus picked up a loaf of bread, thanked God for it, and then broke it. Suddenly, they recognized that he was Jesus. But at that moment, **he disappeared from their sight**.

it was almost evening

This can also be translated as: "the day was ending" or "the sun was going down" or "it was starting to get dark."

he disappeared from their sight

This could also be translated as: "he was gone" or "he was no longer there."

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
-

42:05

The two men said to each other, **“That was Jesus!** That is why we were so excited when he explained God’s word to us!” Immediately they left and went back to Jerusalem. When they arrived, **they told the disciples, “Jesus is alive! We have seen him!”**

That was Jesus!

This exclamation emphasizes how shocked the disciples were to see Jesus alive again. (See: [Exclamations](#))

they told the disciples, “Jesus is alive! We have seen him!”

This is direct quotation. It can also be stated as an indirect quotation: “they told the disciples that Jesus was alive, and that they had seen him!” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

“Jesus is alive!

The two disciples used this exclamation to emphasize to the other disciples that Jesus was alive. (See: [Exclamations](#))

We have seen him!”

The two disciples used this exclamation to emphasize that they not only heard that Jesus was alive, but had personally see him. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
-

42:06

As the disciples were talking, Jesus suddenly appeared in the room with them. He said, **“Peace to you!”** The disciples thought he was **a ghost**, but Jesus said, **“Why are you afraid? Why do you not think it is really I, Jesus?** Look at my hands and feet. Ghosts do not have bodies like I do.” To show that he was not a ghost, he asked for something to eat. They gave him a piece of fish, and he ate it.

Peace to you

‘May you have peace’ or ‘May God give you peace!’ The word **you** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

a ghost

This refers to the spirit of a dead person.

Why are you afraid?

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to comfort them. Alternate translation: "Do not be frightened." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why do you not think it is really I, Jesus?

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. Alternate translation: "Do not doubt I am Jesus!" or "Stop doubting!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
-

42:07

Jesus said, "Everything about me that God's word says will happen, I have told you that it must happen." Then Jesus made them understand God's word better. He said, "Long ago, prophets wrote that I, the Messiah, would suffer, die, and then rise from the dead **on the third day.**"

on the third day

This could mean 'after three days' or 'three days later.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture](#)
 - [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [suffer, suffering](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
-

42:08

"The prophets also wrote that my disciples will **proclaim** God's message. They will tell everyone to repent. **If they repent, God will forgive their sins. My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem.** Then they will go to all people groups everywhere. **You are witnesses of everything** I have said and done, and of everything that happened to me."

proclaim

This could mean 'announce' or 'preach.'

If they repent, God will forgive their sins

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If people repent, then God will forgive their sins. If they do not repent, then he will not forgive their sins. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem

This could mean 'My disciples will begin doing this in Jerusalem' or 'My disciples will begin to proclaim these things in Jerusalem.'

You are witnesses of everything

This could mean 'You will tell other people all the things that.'

Translation Words

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - disciple
 - repent, repentance
 - receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Jerusalem
 - people, people group,
 - testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
-

42:09

During the next 40 days, Jesus appeared to his disciples many times. Once, he even appeared to more than 500 people at the same time! In many ways, he proved to his disciples that he was alive, and he taught them about the kingdom of God.

42:10

Jesus said to his disciples, "God has given me the right to rule over everyone in heaven and on earth. So I am telling you now: go and **make disciples in all people groups**. In order to do this, you must baptize them **in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit**. **You** must also teach them to obey everything I have commanded you. Remember, I will always be with you."

you...You

Each instance of **you** in this frame is plural, and refers to all the disciples present. (See: [Forms of You](#))

make disciples in all people groups

This could mean 'help people from every people group become my disciples.'

in the name of

Here **name** is a metonym that means both, 'by the authority of' and, 'under the authority of.' Consider translating the word **name** literally if it will be understood in this way in your language. This phrase can also be repeated as in, 'in the name of the Father, in the name of the Son, and in the name of the Holy Spirit.' (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Father, the Son

These are important titles for God the Father and for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Holy Spirit

This introduces the Holy Spirit as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
 - [people, people group,](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
 - [obey, obedient](#)
-

42:11

Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until **my Father** gives you power. He will do this by sending the Holy Spirit upon you." Then Jesus went up to heaven, and **a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down in heaven at the right hand of God** to rule **over all things**.

my Father

This is an important title for God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

a cloud hid him from their sight

This could also be translated as: "he disappeared into a cloud."

Jesus sat down in heaven at the right hand of God

To sit down was a symbolic act that indicated that Jesus' work was completed. Furthermore, sitting at the right hand of God represents taking the place of honor beside him. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

at the right hand of God

This could also be translated as: "at the right side of God."

over all things

This could mean 'over everything.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:12-20; Luke 24:13-53; John 20:19-23; Acts 1:1-11

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- disciple
- Jerusalem
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- power, powerful, powerfully
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God

43. The Church Begins

43:00

The Church Begins

This title can also be translated as: "About how the Church began" or "How did the Church begin?"

43:01

After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.

After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem

The connecting word **After** introduces a sequential clause. First Jesus returned to heaven. Then the disciples waited in Jerusalem. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

returned to heaven

This could mean 'went back to heaven.'

stayed in Jerusalem

This could mean 'stayed in Jerusalem for a while.' They didn't stay there permanently.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [pray, prayer](#)
-

43:02

Every year, 50 days after the Passover, the Jews celebrated an important day called **Pentecost**. Pentecost was a time when the Jews **celebrated the wheat harvest**. Jews came from all over the world to Jerusalem to celebrate Pentecost together. **This year** the time for Pentecost came about a week after Jesus had gone back to heaven.

Every year, 50 days after the Passover, the Jews celebrated an important day called Pentecost. Pentecost was a time when the Jews celebrated the wheat harvest. Jews came from all over the world to Jerusalem to celebrate Pentecost together.

This is background information about Pentecost. (See: [Background Information](#))

Pentecost

Pentecost means ‘fiftieth (day).’ You could use the word **Pentecost** in your translation and let the text explain the meaning. Or you could use a term that means ‘50th day.’

celebrated the wheat harvest

The Jews would thank God for the wheat harvest by bringing offerings and celebrate by having special meals. Wheat is a grain crop; if you have no word that means **wheat**, you can use a more general word for grain. This happened in May; other crops were harvested at other times of the year.

This year the time for Pentecost came about a week after Jesus had gone back to heaven.

This introduces a new event. It is now the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Passover. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

This year

This could mean ‘In the year that Jesus died.’

Translation Words

- [Passover](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
-

43:03

While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they had gathered was filled with **a sound like a strong wind**. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers. **They were all filled with the Holy Spirit** and they praised God **in other languages**. They did not know these languages, but these were languages that the Holy Spirit enabled them to speak.

While the believers were all together

The word **While** introduces a simultaneous clause. The two events happened at the same time—the believers were together, and there was a sound like a strong wind. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

a sound like a strong wind

This could mean ‘a noise that a strong wind makes’ or ‘the sound that the wind makes when it blows hard.’

They were all filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

filled with the Holy Spirit

This could mean 'given ability by the Holy Spirit' or 'given power by the Holy Spirit.'

in other languages

This could be translated as: "in languages other than their own language" or "in foreign languages" or "as people from other places speak." The believers did not know these languages until the Holy Spirit gave them the power to speak them. Make sure the word used to translate **languages** refers to languages people actually speak and understand. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
-

43:04

When the people in Jerusalem heard this noise, they came together in **a crowd** to see what was happening. They heard the believers proclaiming the great things God had done. They were astonished because they could understand even though they were from many different countries and spoke many different languages. The disciples were from Israel and spoke Aramaic, Hebrew, or Greek, but the people were each hearing what God had done in their own native language.

a crowd

This could be translated as: "a crowd of people" or "a large group of people."

Translation Words

- [Jerusalem](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [God](#)
-

43:05

Some of these people said that the disciples were drunk. **But Peter stood up and said to them, "Listen to me! These people are not drunk! Instead, what you see is what the prophet Joel said would happen: God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"**

But Peter stood up and said to them

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. People said the disciples were drunk. But if they were drunk, you would not expect Peter to stand up and speak rationally and with authority. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Listen to me!

Peter stated this command in order to cause the crowd to pay close attention to what he was going to tell them.

Joel

Joel was a prophet in Israel who lived hundreds of years before this happened.

God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "God said that in the last days, he would pour out his Spirit." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

the last days

This refers to the final days before the end of the world.

I will pour out my Spirit

Here **pour out** is an idiom that means to give generously and abundantly. Alternate translation: "I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people" (See: [Idiom](#))

my Spirit

This could mean 'my Holy Spirit.'

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
-

43:06

"Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many wonderful things to show who he was. He did many amazing things by God's power. You know this because you saw these things. **But you crucified him!"**

General Information

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

Men of Israel

For some languages, it is better to say: "People of Israel" for it to be clear that this included men and women. This could also be translated as: "My fellow people of Israel" or "My fellow Jews" to make it clear that Peter was also a Jew and belonged to the "people of Israel."

But you crucified him!

Peter used this exclamation to strongly accuse the people in the crowd of murdering Jesus, the Messiah whom God had sent to them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

But you crucified him

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus did many wonderful things, so you would expect people to recognize that he was sent from God. Instead, they crucified him. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

you crucified him!

This could also be translated as: "you caused him to be crucified" or "because of you, he was crucified." The Jews did not actually nail Jesus to the cross. However, the Jewish leaders caused him to be condemned and many of the people in the crowd had shouted for him to be crucified.

Translation Words

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
 - [power, powerful, powerfully](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [crucify, crucified](#)
-

43:07

"Jesus died, but God raised him from the dead. This made come true **what a prophet wrote: 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses that God raised Jesus to life again.**"

General Information

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

what a prophet wrote: 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "what a prophet wrote, that you would not let your Holy One rot in the grave." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

You will not let your

You and **your** refer to God the Father. To make that clear, this could be translated as: "You, God, will not let your." Some languages may have a special way of addressing someone, such as: "You, O God."

rot in the grave

This could mean 'decay in the tomb' or 'decompose in the grave.' This refers to the fact that Jesus did not remain in the tomb very long. It is another way of saying that he did not stay dead, but rather, came back to life again.

We are witnesses

The word **We** refers to the disciples and those that witnessed the risen Jesus after his death. It does not include the people in the crowd. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

raised Jesus to life again

This could mean 'made Jesus alive again.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#)
 - [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
-

43:08

“God the Father has now honored Jesus by making him sit **at his right hand**. And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit to us just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is **causing** the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

General Information

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

God the Father

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

at his right hand

This phrase is an idiom that refers to the highest place of honor and authority. Alternate translation: “in the most important position “ or “in the place of highest honor.” (See: [Idiom](#))

causing

This could mean 'enabling the believers to do' or 'giving these people the power to do.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - promise, promised
-

43:09

“You crucified this man, Jesus. **But know for certain that** God has caused Jesus to become both the Lord of everything and the Messiah!”

General Information

Peter continues preaching to the crowd.

But know for certain that

This phrase indicates contrast relationship. The Jews killed Jesus, but God did the opposite—he made Jesus the lord of everything! (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- crucify, crucified
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - Christ, Messiah
-

43:10

The people listening to Peter were **deeply moved by** the things that he said. **So they asked** Peter and the disciples, “**Brothers**, what should we do?”

deeply moved by

This could mean ‘very troubled by’ or ‘felt very sad when they heard.’ To be **moved** is to feel strong emotions.

So they asked

The connecting word **So** connects the reason (they were deeply moved), with the result (they asked Peter and the disciples what they should do). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Brothers

This was a normal way for a Jew to address fellow Jews. It could also be translated as: “Friends.”

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - disciple
-

43:11

Peter answered them, "All of you need God to forgive your sins. **So repent and be baptized** every one of you **in the name of Jesus Christ**. **Then God will also give you the Holy Spirit as a gift.**"

So repent and be baptized

The word **So** introduces a goal relationship. The people should repent and be baptized because they want to be forgiven of their sins. (See: [Connect - Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

be baptized

This can be stated in active form: "allow us to baptize you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in the name of

This phrase means both, 'by the authority of' and, 'under the authority of.' Consider translating the word **name** literally if it will be understood in this way in your language.

Christ

This is the same meaning as 'Messiah.' It could be translated as: "Anointed One" or "Chosen One." Instead of translating the meaning, some translators may choose to keep the word **Christ** and spell it using the sounds in their own language.

Jesus Christ

Since **Christ** is a title here, some translators may choose to change the order and say: "Christ Jesus." Both orders are used in the Bible.

Then God will also give you the Holy Spirit as a gift

The connecting word **Then** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was because they had repented and had been forgiven of their sins, and the result is they would also receive the Holy Spirit. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - repent, repentance
 - baptize, baptized, baptism
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
-

43:12

About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. **They were baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.

They were baptized

This can be stated in active form: “people baptized them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [church, Church](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
-

43:13

The believers continually listened as the apostles taught them. They often met together and ate together, and they often prayed with each other. They praised God together and they shared everything they had with each other. Everyone in the city **thought well of them**. Every day, more people became believers.

thought well of them

This could mean ‘had a positive opinion of them.’

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Acts 1:12-14; 2

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
- [apostle, apostleship](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)

44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar

44:00

Peter and John Heal a Beggar

This title can also be translated as: "About how Peter and John healed a beggar" or "What happened when Peter and John healed a beggar?"

44:01

One day Peter and John went **to the Temple**. **A crippled man** was sitting at the gate, begging for money.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

to the Temple

They did not go into the Temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "to the Temple courtyard" or "into the Temple area" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

A crippled man was sitting at the gate, begging for money.

This introduces a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

A crippled man

This could also be translated as: "A lame man." This refers to a man who did not have full use of his legs, and could not stand or walk.

Translation Words

- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [John \(the apostle\)](#)
 - [temple](#)
 - [beg, beggar, needy](#)
-

44:02

Peter looked at the lame man and said, "I do not have any money to give you. But **I will give you what I do have. In the name of Jesus, get up** and walk!"

I will give you what I do have

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In the name of Jesus

Here **name** is a metonym that refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "With the authority of Jesus Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

get up

This could mean 'stand up.'

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

44:03

Immediately, God healed the lame man. He began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. The people in **the courtyard of the Temple** were amazed.

Immediately, God healed the lame man

The connecting word **Immediately** introduces a sequential clause. Peter spoke, and then the lame man was healed. But the writer wants the readers to know there was no delay—the healing took place as soon as Peter spoke. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

the courtyard of the Temple

Only priests could enter the Temple, but ordinary Jews were allowed to come into this area that surrounded the Temple.

Translation Words

- God
 - cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
 - praise, praised, praiseworthy
 - temple
-

44:04

A crowd of people quickly came to see the man who was healed. Peter said to them, "This man is well, but do not be amazed at this. **We did not heal him with our own power** or because we honor God. Rather, it is Jesus who healed this man with his power, **because we believe in Jesus.**"

We did not heal him with our own power

We here includes Peter and John, but not the crowd to whom Peter is talking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

because we believe in Jesus

We here includes Peter and John, but not the crowd to whom Peter is talking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words

- cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
 - Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
 - power, powerful, powerfully
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - faith
-

44:05

“You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the one who gives life to everybody. But God raised him from the dead. You did not understand what you were doing, but when you did those things, what the prophets said came true. They said that the Messiah would suffer and die. God made it happen in this way. So now, repent and **turn to God**, so that **he will wash away your sins.**”

Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to preach to the crowd.

turn to God

Here **turn** is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: “start obeying the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will wash away your sins

Peter is speaking of God’s forgiveness for sinners as if God were physically washing them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words

- Rome, Roman
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - life, live, living, alive
 - God
 - raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
 - suffer, suffering
 - repent, repentance
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
-

44:06

When the leaders of the Temple heard Peter and John, they were very upset. **So they arrested them and put them into prison. But many people believed what Peter said. The number of men** who believed in Jesus grew to about 5,000.

So they arrested them and put them into prison

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the leaders of the Temple were very upset; the result is they arrested Peter and John and put them into prison. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

But many people believed what Peter said

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that people would not believe, because Peter and John were put in prison. Instead, 5000 men believed! (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

The number of men

This was in addition to the women and children who believed.

Translation Words

- [temple](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [John \(the apostle\)](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
-

44:07

The next day the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They also brought the man who had been crippled. They asked Peter and John, "**By what power did you heal** this crippled man?"

By what power did you heal

"Who gave you power to heal"

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
 - [John \(the apostle\)](#)
 - [high priest, chief priests](#)
 - [power, powerful, powerfully](#)
-

44:08

Peter answered them, "This man standing before you has been **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, **but God raised him to life again!** You **rejected him, but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus!**"

healed

This could mean 'well' or 'strong.'

but God raised him to life again

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus was crucified, so you would expect him to be dead. But what actually happened is that God raised him to life again. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

God raised him to life again

Here to **raise** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "whom God caused to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

rejected him

This could mean 'refused to accept him' or 'refused to believe in Jesus' or 'refused to believe that Jesus is the Savior.'

but there is no other way to be saved

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The leaders rejected Christ, so you would expect that he was not a person worth anything. However, he is actually the only one with the power to save people. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus

This could also be translated as: "the only way to be saved is through the power of Jesus" or "only Jesus can save us by his power."

to be saved

This can also be translated as: "to be saved from our sins" or "that we can be saved from our sins."

Translation Words

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- power, powerful, powerfully
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Christ, Messiah
- crucify, crucified
- God
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
- life, live, living, alive
- save, saved, safe, salvation

44:09

The leaders **were shocked** that Peter and John spoke so boldly. They saw that these men were **ordinary men who were uneducated**. But **then they remembered** that these men **had been with Jesus**. So they said to them, “We will punish you very much if you give any more messages to the people about this man Jesus.” **After saying many things like this**, they **let Peter and John go**.

were shocked

This could mean ‘were very surprised’ or ‘were amazed.’

ordinary men who were uneducated

The words **ordinary** and **uneducated** share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law. (See: [Doublet](#))

ordinary

This could mean ‘common’ or ‘lower-class.’ Peter and John were simple fishermen.

who were uneducated

This could mean ‘who did not have a formal education.’ This could also be translated as: “who had not gone to religious school.”

then they remembered

This could also be translated as: “But then they thought about the fact that.”

had been with Jesus

This could also be translated as: “had spend time with Jesus” or “had been taught by Jesus.”

After saying many things like this

This could mean ‘after threatening Peter and John in similar ways.’

let Peter and John go

This could mean ‘allowed Peter and John to leave.’

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Acts 3-4:22

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
- [John \(the apostle\)](#)

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

45. Stephen and Philip

45:00

Stephen and Philip

This title can also be translated as: "About how Stephen and Philip told people about Jesus" or "What happened when Stephen and Philip told people about Jesus?"

45:01

One of the leaders among the first followers of Jesus was a man named Stephen. Everyone respected him. The Holy Spirit gave him much power and wisdom. Stephen did many miracles. Many people believed him when he taught them to trust in Jesus.

One of the leaders among the first followers of Jesus was a man named Stephen.

This introduces Stephen as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Everyone respected him

This is background information about the kind of person Stephen was. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words

- church, Church
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - wise, wisdom
 - miracle, wonder, sign
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

45:02

One day when Stephen was teaching about Jesus, some Jews who did not believe in Jesus came and began to argue with him. They became very angry, **so they went to the religious leaders and told lies about him.** They said, "**We heard Stephen speak evil things about Moses and God!**" So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the high priest and the other leaders of the Jews. More false witnesses came and lied to them about Stephen.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

so they went to the religious leaders and told lies about him.

The word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the Jews were very angry with Stephen because they could not win arguments with him. The result is they told lies about him. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

We heard Stephen speak evil things about Moses and God!

They used this exclamation to express how angry they were with Stephen, and to try to make the other people angry with him as well. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Jew, Jewish](#)
 - [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
 - [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
 - [Moses](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [high priest, chief priests](#)
 - [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
-

45:03

The high priest asked Stephen, "Are these men telling the truth about you?" Stephen began to say many things in order to answer the high priest. He said that God had done many wonderful things for the people of Israel from the time when Abraham lived to the time of Jesus. But the people had always disobeyed God. Stephen said, "You people are stubborn and rebellious against God. You **always reject the Holy Spirit**, just as **our ancestors** always rejected God and always killed his prophets. **But you did something worse than they did! You killed the Messiah!**"

always reject the Holy Spirit

This could mean 'never obey the Holy Spirit' or 'always refuse to listen to the Holy Spirit.'

our ancestors

This could be translated as: "our ancestors, the Israelites."

But you did something worse than they did! You killed the Messiah!

Stephen used these exclamations to accuse the Jews of murdering the Messiah whom God had sent to them. (See: [Exclamations](#))

Translation Words

- [high priest, chief priests](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
 - rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - Christ, Messiah
-

45:04

When the religious leaders heard this, they were so angry that they **covered their ears** and **yelled loudly**. They dragged Stephen out of the city and threw stones at him in order to kill him.

covered their ears

This was a symbolic action to show that they did not want to hear what Stephen said. This could also be translated as: "They put their hands over their ears." (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

yelled loudly

They were yelling in anger. Translate this in a way that communicates that they were very upset.

Translation Words

- [Jewish authorities, Jewish leader](#)
-

45:05

As Stephen was dying, he **cried out**, "Jesus, receive my spirit." He **fell to his knees** and cried out again, "Master, **do not hold this sin against them.**" Then he died.

As Stephen was dying

This could mean 'Just before Stephen died.'

cried out

This could mean 'called out in a loud voice' or 'said very loudly.'

Jesus, receive my spirit

This could mean 'take my spirit.' It may be helpful to add 'please' to show that this was a request. Alternate translation: "please receive my spirit"

He fell to his knees

This is an act of submission to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

do not hold this sin against them

This could mean 'do not consider them guilty of the sin of killing me.' This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "forgive them for this sin" (See: [Litotes](#))

Then he died

This is the end of the story about Stephen. (See: [End of Story](#))

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance](#)
 - [spirit, spiritual](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
-

45:06

That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of opposition, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.

That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of opposition, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.

This is background information about the persecution of the believers after the death of Stephen. (See: [Background Information](#))

But in spite of opposition

The Jewish leaders thought they could stop the spread of Jesus' teaching by persecuting his followers. Instead, this caused them to scatter and spread the message even more widely.

Translation Words

- [Paul, Saul](#)
 - [Jerusalem](#)
 - [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
-

45:07

There was a believer in Jesus named Philip. He fled from Jerusalem, as did most other believers. He went to the region of Samaria where he preached to people about Jesus. Many people believed him and were saved. **One day**, an angel came from God to Philip and told him to go into the wilderness, and to walk down a certain road. Philip went there. As he was walking

on the road, he saw a man riding in his chariot. **This man was an important official from the land of Ethiopia.** The Holy Spirit told Philip to go and talk with this man.

There was a believer in Jesus named Philip

This introduces Philip as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

This man was an important official from the land of Ethiopia.

This is background information about the official from Ethiopia. (See: [Background Information](#))

Ethiopia

Ethiopia is a country in Eastern Africa.

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

45:08

So Philip went to the chariot. He heard **the Ethiopian** reading God's word. He was reading what the prophet Isaiah had written. The man read, "They **led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. They took his life away from him.**"

the Ethiopian

That is, a person from the country of Ethiopia. See note on [45:07](#).

led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. They took his life away from him."

The pronouns **he**, **him**, and **his** in this quotation refer to the Messiah. (See: [Pronouns](#))

as a lamb is silent

This could also be translated as: “like a lamb that is silent even when it is about to be killed.”

Translation Words

- [chariot, charioteers](#)
 - [Isaiah](#)
 - [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
-

45:09

Philip asked the Ethiopian, “**Do you understand what you are reading?**” The Ethiopian replied, “No. I cannot understand it unless someone explains it to me. **Please come and sit next to me. Was Isaiah writing about** himself or someone else?”

“Do you understand what you are reading?”

The Ethiopian was intelligent and could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Alternate translation: “Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Please come and sit next to me

It is implied here that Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the scriptures. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Was Isaiah writing about

This can also be translated as: “Was Isaiah referring to.”

Translation Words

- [Isaiah](#)
-

45:10

Philip got into the chariot and sat down. Then he told the Ethiopian man that Isaiah had written about Jesus. Philip also spoke about many other parts of God’s word. In this way, he told the man the good news about Jesus.

45:11

As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to **some water**. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! **May I be baptized?**” And he told the driver to stop the chariot.

some water

Use a term that means a larger body of water such as a pond, lake, or stream.

May I be baptized?

This could also be translated as: "Is there any reason that I cannot be baptized?"

Translation Words

- baptize, baptized, baptism
 - chariot, charioteers
-

45:12

So they went down into the water, and Philip baptized the Ethiopian. After they came up out of the water, the Holy Spirit suddenly **carried Philip away** to another place. **There Philip continued to tell people about Jesus.**

So they went down into the water

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the Ethiopian believed what Philip told him, and asked to be baptized when they saw water nearby. The result is Philip baptized him. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

carried Philip away

This could mean 'took Philip away' or 'snatched Philip away.'

There Philip continued to tell people about Jesus

This is the end of the story about Philip. (See: [End of Story](#))

Translation Words

- baptize, baptized, baptism
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

45:13

The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home. He was happy that he now knew Jesus.

The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home. He was happy that he now knew Jesus.

This is the end of the story about the Ethiopian official. (See: [End of Story](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Acts 6-8

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus

46:00

Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus

This title can also be translated as: "About how Saul became a follower of Christ" or "How did Saul become a follower of Christ?"

46:01

There was a man named Saul who did not believe in Jesus. When he was a young man, he guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. Later he persecuted the believers. He went **from house to house** in Jerusalem **to arrest both men and women** and to put them in prison. Then the high priest gave Saul permission to go to the city of **Damascus**. He told Saul to arrest followers of Jesus there and **to bring them back to Jerusalem**.

There was a man named Saul who did not believe in Jesus

This introduces Saul as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

When he was a young man, he guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen

This is background information about Saul. (See: [Background Information](#))

guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen

See [45:06](#).

from house to house

This could mean 'into many houses.'

to arrest both men and women

This refers to men and women who believed in Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Damascus

Damascus is now the capital of the country of Syria. During Saul's time, it was a city belonging to the Roman Empire. Most of the people there were not Jewish, but there were some Jews and also some followers of Jesus living there.

to bring them back to Jerusalem

Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jerusalem
 - high priest, chief priests
-

46:02

So Saul began to travel to Damascus. **Just before he reached the city**, a bright light in the sky shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! **Why are you persecuting me?**" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!"

Just before he reached the city

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Why are you persecuting me?

This rhetorical question communicates a rebuke to Saul. In some languages a statement would be more natural. Alternate translation: "You are persecuting me!" or a command "Stop persecuting me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
-

46:03

When Saul got up, he could not see. His friends had to lead him into Damascus. **Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days.**

Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
-

46:04

There was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias. God said to him, "Go to the house where Saul is staying. Place your hands on him so that he can see again." **But Ananias said,** "Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers." **God answered him,** "**Go!** I have chosen him **to declare my name** to the Jews and to people from other people groups. He will suffer many things **for my name.**"

There was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias

This introduces Ananias as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

But Ananias said

If it is not clear why the word **But** is used here, this could be translated as: "But Ananias was afraid, so he said."

God answered him

This could be translated as: "To reassure Ananias, God said" to make clear why God said this.

Go!

This is a command and also an exclamation. God is emphasizing that Ananias should stop objecting and go to Saul as God instructed him to do. (See: [Exclamations](#))

to declare my name

This could mean 'to teach about me' or 'to make me known.'

for my name

Here "my name" is a metonym that refers to Jesus. Saul will suffer many things because he will tell people about Jesus. Alternate translation: "for me" or "because of me" or "because he serves me" or "because he teaches others about me." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [Paul, Saul](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
 - [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
 - [suffer, suffering](#)
-

46:05

So Ananias went to Saul, **placed his hands on him**, and said, "Jesus, who appeared to you on your way **here**, sent me to you so that you can see again, and so the Holy Spirit will fill you."

Immediately Saul was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him. Then Saul ate some food and became strong again.

placed his hands on him

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

here

This could mean 'to Damascus.'

Immediately

This introduces a simultaneous clause. Saul was able to see as soon as Ananias touched him. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
 - baptize, baptized, baptism
-

46:06

Right away Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus. He said, "Jesus is the **Son of God!**" The Jews were amazed **because Saul had tried to kill believers**, and now he believed in Jesus! Saul **argued with the Jews**. He showed that Jesus was the Messiah.

Right away

This introduces a new event. This can also be translated as: "Immediately" or "Then." (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

because Saul had tried to kill believers

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (the change in Saul, that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus), with the result (the Jews were amazed). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

argued with the Jews

This could also be translated as: "gave the Jews good reasons for believing in Jesus" or "spoke persuasively with the Jews."

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - Jew, Jewish
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Son of God, the Son
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Christ, Messiah
-

46:07

After many days, the Jews made a plan to kill Saul. They sent people **to watch for him at the city gates** in order to kill him. But Saul heard about the plan, and his friends helped him escape. One night they **lowered him over the city wall in a basket**. After Saul escaped from Damascus, he continued to preach about Jesus.

After many days

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the Jews made a plan to kill Saul

Here **the Jews** refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to watch for him at the city gates

The gates were the only normal way into or out of the walled cities. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

lowered him over the city wall in a basket

Another way to say this would be: “helped him get into a large basket and lowered the basket with him in it over the city wall.”

Translation Words

- Jew, Jewish
 - Paul, Saul
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

46:08

Saul went to Jerusalem to meet with the apostles, **but they were afraid of him**. Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles. He told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus. After that the apostles **accepted Saul**.

Saul went to Jerusalem

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

but they were afraid of him

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Saul was now a disciple so you would expect the apostles would want to meet with him, but instead they were afraid. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

accepted Saul

This could mean 'believed that Saul also was a believer in Jesus.'

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - Jerusalem
 - disciple
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Barnabas
 - apostle, apostleship
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
-

46:09

Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to **the city of Antioch** and preached about Jesus. Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, people who were not Jews became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and **to strengthen the church**. It was at Antioch that **believers in Jesus were first called 'Christians.'**

the city of Antioch

This was an ancient city located in what is now the southernmost tip of the modern country of Turkey, near its border with Syria and close to the Mediterranean Sea. It was about 450 miles northwest of Jerusalem.

to strengthen the church

This could also be translated as: "to help the church to grow strong spiritually" or "to help the believers in Jesus to grow strong in their faith" or "to help the people to believe more firmly in Jesus."

believers in Jesus were first called 'Christians.'

This implies that other people called the believers by this name. This can be stated in active form: "The people of Antioch first called the believers in Jesus 'Christians.'" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- Jerusalem
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Jew, Jewish

- Barnabas
 - Paul, Saul
 - church, Church
 - Christian
-

46:10

One day, the followers of Jesus at Antioch were fasting and praying. The Holy Spirit said to them, “**Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.**” So **the church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and **placed their hands on them**. Then they **sent them out** to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places. Barnabas and Saul taught people in different people groups, and many people believed in Jesus.

One day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.

This sentence could also be translated as: “Appoint Paul and Barnabas to do the special work I have chosen them to do.”

the church

This could also be translated as: “the believers” or “the followers of Jesus.”

placed their hands on them

This act showed that the leaders agreed that the Holy Spirit had called Barnabas and Saul to do this work. This could also be translated as: “blessed them with the power and authority of the Holy Spirit by putting their hands on them” or “put their hands on them as a sign of their unity in the Spirit.” Some languages may have to say where they placed their hands. If so, you could say they placed their hands on their head, shoulder or back. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

sent them out

This could mean ‘sent them away’ or ‘sent them on their journey.’

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Acts 8:1-3; 9:1-31; 11:19-26; 13-14

Translation Words

- fast, fasting
- pray, prayer
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- church, Church
- Barnabas

- Paul, Saul
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

47. Paul and Silas in Philippi

47:00

Paul and Silas in Philippi

This title can also be translated as: "About what happened to Paul and Silas in Philippi" or "What happened to Paul and Silas in Philippi?"

47:01

As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, 'Paul.'
One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to **proclaim** the good news about Jesus. They went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray. There **they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.**

As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, 'Paul.'

This is background information about why Saul was now called Paul. (See: [Background Information](#))

One day

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

proclaim

This could mean 'teach' or 'preach.'

they met a woman named Lydia

This introduces Lydia as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.

This is background information about who Lydia was. (See: [Background Information](#))

merchant

This could also be translated as: "seller" or "business owner."

Translation Words

- Rome, Roman
- Paul, Saul
- Silas, Silvanus
- Philippi, Philippians
- good news, gospel
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- love, beloved
- prostrate, worship

- [God](#)
-

47:02

God enabled Lydia to believe the message about Jesus. Paul and Silas baptized her and her family. **She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house**, so they stayed there.

She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house

This was the normal custom of the day for people to provide hospitality to visitors in their homes. There were no immoral motives in this arrangement.

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
 - [Paul, Saul](#)
 - [Silas, Silvanus](#)
-

47:03

Paul and Silas often met with people at the place where Jews prayed. Every day as they walked there, **a slave girl** possessed by a demon followed them. By means of this demon, she predicted the future for people, so she made a lot of money for **her masters** as a **fortuneteller**.

a slave girl

This introduces the unnamed slave girl as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

her masters

In this case, this could also be translated as: "her owners."

a fortuneteller

This could mean 'as someone who told people what would happen to them in the future.' A fortuneteller tried to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a 'diviner' or 'soothsayer.' (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [Paul, Saul](#)
- [Silas, Silvanus](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

- demon-possessed
 - demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
-

47:04

The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God. They are telling you **the way to be saved!**” She did this so often that Paul became annoyed.

the way to be saved

How a person can be saved is spoken of here as if it were a way or path that a person walks on. Alternate translation: “how you can be saved” or “how God saves people” or “God’s plan for saving people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - Paul, Saul
-

47:05

Finally, **one day** when the slave girl started yelling, Paul **turned to her** and said to the demon that was in her, “**In the name of Jesus, come out of her.**” **Right away the demon left her.**

one day

This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

turned to her

This could mean ‘turned around and looked at her.’

In the name of Jesus

This could mean ‘by the authority of Jesus.’ Here **name** stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ. Because of Jesus’ authority, Paul could command the demon to leave. (See: [Metonymy](#))

come out of her

This could mean ‘leave her’ or ‘go away from her.’

Right away the demon left her

‘the demon came out immediately’ (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Paul, Saul
 - demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

47:06

The men who owned the slave girl became very angry! They realized that, **without the demon**, the slave girl could not tell people **the future**. **This meant that** people would no longer pay her owners to have her tell their future.

The men who owned the slave girl became very angry!

This exclamation emphasizes how angry the men who owned the servant girl became at Paul and Silas. (See: [Exclamations](#))

without the demon

This could mean ‘without the power from the demon’ or ‘now that she did not have the demon.’

the future

This could mean ‘what would happen to them in the future.’

This meant that

This could also be translated as: “Because of this” or “Therefore.”

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
-

47:07

So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities, **who beat** Paul and Silas, and then **threw them** into jail.

So the owners of the slave girl

The connecting word **So** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the owners could no longer make money. The result was they took Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

who beat

who refers to the Roman authorities, not the owners of the slave girl. (See: [Pronouns](#))

threw them

This could mean 'put them.'

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Paul, Saul
 - Silas, Silvanus
 - Rome, Roman
-

47:08

They put Paul and Silas in the part of the prison where there were the most guards. They even attached their feet to large pieces of wood. **But in the middle of the night**, Paul and Silas were **singing songs of praise to God**.

But in the middle of the night

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Paul and Silas had been beaten, put in prison with their feet locked into wood. You would expect them to be crying or protesting, but instead of doing that, they were singing songs of praise to God. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

in the middle of the night

This could be translated as: "very late at night" or "very early in the morning." This was when it was completely dark outside, when people would normally be asleep.

singing songs of praise to God

This can also be translated as: "praising God by singing" or "singing songs to praise God" or "singing songs that gave praise to God."

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - Silas, Silvanus
 - praise, praised, praiseworthy
 - God
-

47:09

Suddenly, there was a violent earthquake! All the prison doors opened wide, and **the chains of all the prisoners fell off**.

Suddenly

This introduces a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the chains of all the prisoners

The possessive **of all the prisoners** here refers chains that were holding the prisoners in place. They did not belong to the prisoners—they belonged to the Roman government. (See: [Possession](#))

fell off

This could mean ‘suddenly came off’ or ‘suddenly came apart so that the prisoners were released.’

47:10

Then **the jailer** woke up. He saw that the prison doors were open. He thought that all the prisoners had escaped. He was afraid the Roman authorities would kill him for allowing them to go, **so he got ready to kill himself! But Paul saw him and shouted**, “Stop! Do not hurt yourself. **We** are all here.”

the jailer

This could mean ‘the official in charge of the jail.’

so he got ready to kill himself

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the jailer was afraid of the Roman authorities because he thought the prisoners had escaped. The result is he intended to kill himself. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

But Paul saw him and shouted

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that the prisoners had escaped and that the jailer will kill himself. Instead Paul stops him from killing himself, and tells him that all the prisoners are still in the jail. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

We

Some languages have a special form of the word **We** which does not include the person being talked to. Here the **We** does not include the jailer, only Paul and the rest of the prisoners. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words

- [Rome, Roman](#)
 - [Paul, Saul](#)
-

47:11

The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “**What must I do to be saved?**” Paul answered, “**Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.**” Then the jailer took Paul and Silas into his home and washed their wounds. Paul preached the good news about Jesus to everyone in his house.

What must I do to be saved?

The question refers to salvation from being punished by the God who caused the earthquake. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what must I do for God to save me from my sins?" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Believe in Jesus, the Master

This was addressed to both the jailer and his family, who all then believed and were baptized. Some languages may use a grammatical form of the verb **believe** to indicate that Paul is speaking to the group.

you and your family will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save you and your family" or "God will save you and your family from eternal punishment for your sins." Make sure it is clear that the salvation referred to here is spiritual, not physical. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words

- Paul, Saul
 - Silas, Silvanus
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - good news, gospel
-

47:12

The jailer and his whole family believed in Jesus, **so Paul and Silas baptized them**. Then the jailer gave Paul and Silas a meal, and they rejoiced together.

so Paul and Silas baptized them

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason was the jailer and his whole family believed in Jesus. The result was that Paul and Silas baptized all of them. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - baptize, baptized, baptism
 - Paul, Saul
 - Silas, Silvanus
 - joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
-

47:13

The next day **the leaders of the city** released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and Silas visited Lydia and some other friends **and then left the city. The good news about Jesus kept spreading**, and **the Church kept growing**.

the leaders of the city

This refers to the officials of the city or the authorities of the city.

and then left the city

This indicates that end of the story. (See: [End of Story](#))

The good news about Jesus kept spreading

This could mean 'People in more and more places were hearing the good news about Jesus.'

the Church kept growing

This could mean 'more and more people were becoming part of the Church' or 'more and more people were believing in Jesus.'

Translation Words

- [Paul, Saul](#)
 - [Silas, Silvanus](#)
 - [Philippi, Philippians](#)
 - [good news, gospel](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [church, Church](#)
-

47:14

Paul and other leaders of the believers traveled to many cities. They preached and taught people the good news about Jesus. They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches. Some of these letters became books of the Bible.

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Acts 16:11-40

Translation Words

- [Paul, Saul](#)
- [Christian](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
- church, Church

48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

48:00

Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

This title can also be translated as: "About how Jesus Is the Messiah that God promised to send" or "How is Jesus Is the Messiah that God promised to send?"

48:01

When **God created the world**, everything was **perfect**. **There was no sin**. Adam and Eve loved each other, and they loved God. **There was no sickness or death**. This was the way God wanted the world to be.

God created the world

This could mean 'God made the world out of nothing.'

perfect

This could mean 'exactly as it should be' to accomplish all that God intended for it.

There was no sin

For some languages, it is not possible to express **sin** as a thing, rather it is an action. In those cases this could be translated as: "No one ever sinned" or "People did not sin" or "Nothing evil had happened."

There was no sickness or death

This could mean 'No one got sick and no one died' or 'They did not get sick or die.'

Translation Words

- God
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Adam
 - Eve
 - love, beloved
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

48:02

Satan spoke to Eve in **the garden** through the snake because he wanted to **deceive her**. Then she and Adam sinned against God. **Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies**.

the garden

This refers to the garden created by God where he placed the first man and woman.

deceive her

This could mean 'lie to her.' Satan lied by leading Eve to doubt what God had said. By doing this, he tricked her into disobeying God.

Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies

The connecting word **Because** connects the reason (they sinned), with the result (everyone on earth dies). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Satan, devil, evil one
 - Eve
 - Adam
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

48:03

Because Adam and Eve sinned, something even worse happened. They became enemies of God. As a result, every person since then has sinned. Every person is an enemy of God from birth. There was no peace between people and God. **But God wanted to make peace.**

But God wanted to make peace

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that God would want to destroy his enemies. Instead God wants to make peace. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Adam
 - Eve
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
-

48:04

God promised that one of Eve's descendants would **crush Satan's head**, and Satan would **bite his heel**. In other words, Satan would kill the Messiah, **but God would raise him to life again**. The Messiah would take away Satan's power forever. Many years later, God showed that the Messiah is Jesus.

crush Satan's head

This could also be translated as: "step on Satan's head and smash it down flat" or "shatter Satan's head by stepping on it." This (crushing the head) represents a person stepping on the head of a snake. The head is completely crushed, and the snake is dead and therefore harmless.

bite his heel

This represents a snake on the ground biting a person's foot. In this case, Satan would cause the Messiah to suffer, but would not destroy him.

but God would raise him to life again

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Satan would kill the Messiah, so you would expect him to be dead. Instead, God would raise the Messiah to life again. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

raise him to life again

This could mean 'make him alive again.'

Translation Words

- God
 - promise, promised
 - Eve
 - descend, descendant
 - Satan, devil, evil one
 - Christ, Messiah
 - raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
 - life, live, living, alive
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

48:05

God told Noah to build a boat to save his family from the flood he was going to send. This is how God saved the people who believed in him. In the same way, everyone deserves death from God because they have sinned. **But God sent Jesus** to save everyone who believes in him.

But God sent Jesus

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect God to kill everyone because everyone has sinned. Instead, God sent Jesus to save people from their sin. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

48:06

For hundreds of years, priests kept on offering sacrifices to God. This showed people that they committed sin and that they deserved God's punishment. **But those sacrifices could not forgive their sins.** Jesus did what the priests could not do. **He gave himself** to be the only sacrifice that could take away everyone's sin. He accepted onto himself the punishment that we should have received for our sins. For this reason, Jesus is the Great High Priest.

For hundreds of years, priests kept on offering sacrifices to God

This is background information about the sacrifices the priests offered to God in the past. (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

But those sacrifices could not forgive their sins

This indicates an exceptional relationship. The sacrifices could show people their sin and that it deserved punishment, but it could not forgive those sins. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

He gave himself

This could also be translated as: "Jesus allowed himself to be killed."

Translation Words

- [priest, priesthood](#)
 - [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [high priest, chief priests](#)
 - [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
-

48:07

God had told Abraham, "I will bless **all the people groups on the earth** through you." Jesus was a descendant of this Abraham. God blesses all the people groups through Abraham, **because God saves from sin everyone who believes in Jesus. When these people believe in Jesus,** God considers them to be descendants of Abraham.

all the people groups on the earth

This could also be translated as: "people from all different parts of the world."

because God saves from sin everyone who believes in Jesus

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (God saves from sin those who believe in Jesus), with the result (all the people groups are blessed through Abraham's descendant Jesus). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

When these people believe in Jesus

The connecting word **When** connects the reason (people believe in Jesus (Abraham's descendant)), with the result (God considers people who believe in Jesus to be Abraham's descendants). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - Abraham, Abram
 - people, people group,
 - bless, blessed, blessing
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - descend, descendant
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - spirit, spiritual
-

48:08

God told Abraham to sacrifice his own son, Isaac, to him. **But then God gave a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac.** We all **deserve to die** for our sins! **But God gave Jesus** to be a sacrifice **to die in our place.** That is why we call Jesus the Lamb of God.

But then God gave a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac

The connecting words **But then** introduces a contrast relationship. God told Abraham to sacrifice his son Isaac, instead of allowing Isaac to be sacrificed, God provided a ram. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

instead of Isaac

This can also be translated as: "in the place of Isaac" or "in Isaac's place" or "so that he would not have to offer Isaac as a sacrifice."

deserve to die

This could mean 'should die.'

But God gave Jesus

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. We all deserve to die for our sin but instead God gave Jesus to die in our place. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

to die in our place

This can also be translated as: "to die in the place of each of us" or "so that he would not have to kill us."

Translation Words

- God
- Abraham, Abram
- son

- Isaac
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

48:09

When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a lamb. The lamb must not have any flaws. Then they had to spread **its blood** on the tops and sides of their **door frames**. When God saw the blood, he **passed over** their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. When this happened, God called this the Passover.

When God sent the last plague on Egypt

This clause gives background information about the time during the last plague on Egypt. The main event is the Passover that shows how God will pay for people's sins. (See: [Connect - Background Information](#))

sent the last plague on Egypt

This could mean 'caused the final disaster to come on Egypt.' This was the tenth plague when God caused the firstborn sons of the Egyptians to die.

its blood

This could mean 'the lamb's blood.'

door frames

If door frames are not known, this could be translated as: "doors."

passed over

This could also be translated as: "passed by" or "went by." You may want to connect how this is translated with how **Passover** is translated.

Translation Words

- God
 - Egypt, Egyptian
 - Israel, Israelites
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - blood
 - Passover
-

48:10

Jesus is like a Passover Lamb. He never sinned, so there was nothing wrong with him. He was killed at the time of the Passover festival. When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood of Jesus**

pays for that person's sin. It is as if God passed over that person, because he does not punish him.

blood of Jesus

This could be translated as: "The sacrifice that Jesus made of himself when he died for sinners." The word **blood** here also means 'death.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Passover
 - lamb, Lamb of God
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - blood
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
-

48:11

God made a covenant with the Israelites **because they were the people he had chosen to belong to himself**. But God has now made a New Covenant that is for everyone. **If anyone in any people group accepts this New Covenant**, he joins God's people. He does this because he believes in Jesus.

because they were the people he had chosen to belong to himself

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (the Israelites were God's chosen people), with the result (God made a covenant with them). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

If anyone in any people group accepts this New Covenant

The connecting word **If** connects the reason (he accepts the New Covenant and believes in Jesus), with the result (he joins God's people). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - covenant
 - Israel, Israelites
 - covenant
 - people, people group,
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
-

48:12

Moses was a prophet who proclaimed the word of God with great power. But Jesus is **the greatest prophet** of all. He is God, so all the things he did and said were the actions and words of God. That is why the Scriptures **call Jesus the Word of God**.

the greatest prophet

This could mean 'the most important prophet.'

call Jesus the Word of God

Jesus reveals God's character. The other prophets preached the message God gave them, but Jesus revealed God in his preaching and his actions.

Translation Words

- Moses
 - prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
 - word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
-

48:13

God promised King David that one of his descendants would rule as king over God's people forever. Jesus is the Son of God and the Messiah, **so he is the descendant of David who can rule forever**.

so he is the descendant of David who can rule forever

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is Jesus is the Son of God and the Messiah. The result is he is the descendant of David who can rule forever. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - promise, promised
 - David
 - Son of God, the Son
 - Christ, Messiah
 - descend, descendant
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
-

48:14

David was a king of Israel, **but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!** He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace forever.

but Jesus is the king of the entire universe

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. David was a king of Israel, so you would expect him to be one of the greatest kings ever. Instead, Jesus is far greater, because he is king of the universe. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

the king of the entire universe

This could mean 'the king over everyone and everything everywhere.'

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 1-3, 6, 14, 22; Exodus 12, 20; 2 Samuel 7; Hebrews 3:1-6, 4:14-5:10, 7:1-8:13, 9:11-10:18; Revelation 21

Translation Words

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)

49. God's New Covenant

49:00

God's New Covenant

This title can also be translated as: "About the New Covenant that God made with people" or "What is the New Covenant that God made with people?"

49:01

An angel told Mary, a young woman, that she would give birth to **God's Son**. She was still a virgin, **but the Holy Spirit came to her** and made her become pregnant. She gave birth to a son and named him Jesus. Therefore, Jesus is both God and human.

God's Son

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

but the Holy Spirit came to her

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Mary was a virgin, so you would not expect her to become pregnant. Instead, the Holy Spirit caused her to become pregnant. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [virgin, virginity](#)
 - [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#)
 - [Son of God, the Son](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

49:02

Jesus did many miracles that show that he is God. He walked on water and stopped storms. He healed many sick people and drove demons out of many others. He **raised dead people to life**, and he turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food to feed over 5,000 people.

raised dead people to life

This could also be translated as: "caused dead people to become alive again."

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [God](#)

- cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
 - demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
 - raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
-

49:03

Jesus was also **a great teacher**. Everything he taught, he taught correctly. People should do what he told them to do because he is the **Son of God**. For example, he taught that you need to love other people **the same way** you love yourself.

a great teacher

This could mean 'a very important teacher' or 'an excellent teacher.'

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

the same way

This could mean 'as much as' or 'the same amount that' or 'to the same degree that.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Son of God, the Son
 - love, beloved
-

49:04

He also taught that you need to love God more than you love anything else, including your possessions.

49:05

Jesus said that it is better to be in God's kingdom than to have anything else in the world. God must save you from your sins in order for you to enter his kingdom.

49:06

Jesus said that some people will accept him. God will save these people. However, **other people will not** accept him. He also said that some people are like good soil. Because they accept the good news about Jesus, God saves them. However, other people are like the hard soil on a path.

God's Word is like seed that falls on the path, but nothing grows there. These people reject the message about Jesus. They refuse to enter into his kingdom.

other people will not

This could mean 'other people will not accept him and therefore will not be saved.'

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - good news, gospel
 - word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
 - kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
-

49:07

Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much. He wants to forgive them and to make them his children.

49:08

Jesus also told us that God hates sin. Because Adam and Eve sinned, all of their descendants also sin. Every person in the world sins and is far from God. Everyone is an enemy of God.

49:09

But God loved everyone in the world in this way: he **gave his only Son** so that God will not punish those who believe in Jesus. **Instead, believers will live with him forever.**

But God loved everyone in the world

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Everyone is an enemy of God, so you would expect God to hate and destroy them. Instead, God loves everyone and gave his son for them. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

gave his only Son

This could also be translated as: "offered his only Son to the world as a sacrifice for sins" or "gave us his only Son to be a sacrifice for our sins."

Instead, believers will live with him forever

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Those who believe in God still sin, so you would expect them to be punished. Instead, they will live with God forever. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - love, beloved
 - Son of God, the Son
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - life, live, living, alive
-

49:10

You deserve to die **because you have sinned**. It would be right for God to punish you, **but Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place**. God punished Jesus by killing him on a cross.

because you have sinned

The connecting word **because** connects the reason (you have sinned), with the result (you deserve to die). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

but Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect God to be angry with you because of your sin. Instead, he punished Jesus. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - guilt, guilty
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - God
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - cross
 - receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
-

49:11

Jesus never sinned. He accepted the punishment for sin, including the worst possible death. In this way, he was the perfect sacrifice to **take away** your sins and the sins of every person in the world. Jesus sacrificed himself to God, **so God will forgive any sin**, even terrible sins, of the people who believe in Jesus.

take away

This could mean 'remove the penalty of' or 'remove the punishment for.' The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

so God will forgive any sin

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (Jesus sacrificed himself), with the result (God forgives people's sin). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
 - God
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
-

49:12

Even if you do many very good things, this will not make God save you. There is nothing you can do on your own to become friends with him. **Instead**, you should believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross **instead of you**, and that God **raised him to life again**. **If you believe this**, God will forgive you for having sinned.

Instead

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that doing good things might save you, or that nothing could make you God's friend. Instead, believing in Christ saves you and makes you God's friend. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

instead of you

This could mean 'in your place.'

raised him to life again

This could also be translated as: "made him alive again."

If you believe this

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you believe in Christ, then God will forgive your sins. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

Translation Words

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
- Son of God, the Son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- cross
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

- life, live, living, alive
-

49:13

God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and accepts him as their Master. **But he will not save** those who do not believe in him. It does not matter if you are rich or poor, man or woman, old or young, or where you live. God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus **so he can be a friend to you.**

But he will not save

The connecting word **But** introduces an exceptional relationship. God saves everyone who believes. But people who do not believe are excluded from the **everyone**. Alternate translation: "God will only save those who believe in Jesus and accept him as their Master. He will not save those who do not believe in him." (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

so he can be a friend to you.

The connecting word **so** connects the reason (you believe in Jesus), with the result (he can be a friend to you). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- God
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - love, beloved
-

49:14

Jesus is calling you **to believe in him** and **to be baptized**. Do you **believe that** Jesus is the Messiah, the only Son of God? Do you believe that you are a sinner and that you deserve God's punishment for your sin? Do you believe that Jesus died on the cross **to take away** your sins?

to believe in him

This can also be translated as: "to trust in him" or "to trust in him to save you" or "to entrust your whole life to him."

to be baptized

This could also be translated as: "to have someone baptize you" or "to let them baptize you."

believe that

This can also be translated as: "acknowledge that" or "agree that."

to take away

See note on [49:11](#).

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - baptize, baptized, baptism
 - Christ, Messiah
 - Son of God, the Son
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - God
 - punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
 - die, dead, deadly, death,
 - cross
-

49:15**If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus!**

Satan no longer rules you in his **kingdom of darkness**. God is now ruling over you in his **kingdom of light**. God has enabled you to no longer sin as you used to do. He has given you a new, right way of living.

If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus!

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, then you are a Christ follower. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

kingdom of darkness

Darkness is used here to refer to sin and everything that is evil. This could be translated as: "evil rule over people, which is like darkness."

kingdom of light

Light here refers to God's holiness and goodness. This could be translated as: "righteous rule over people, which is like light." The Bible often compares evil to darkness, and goodness to light.

Translation Words

- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - Christian
 - God
 - Satan, devil, evil one
 - kingdom
 - kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
-

49:16

If you are a follower of Jesus, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did. Now, God **considers you to be** a close friend instead of an enemy.

If you are a follower of Jesus

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you are a Christ follower, then God has forgiven your sins and you are his close friend. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

considers you to be

This could mean 'thinks of you as' or 'regards you as' or 'calls you.'

Translation Words

- [Christian](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

49:17

If you are a friend of God and a servant of Jesus the Master, you will want to obey what Jesus teaches you. Even though you are a follower of Jesus, Satan will still tempt you to sin. **But God always does what he says he will do**. He says that **if you confess your sins**, he will forgive you. **He will give you strength to fight against sin**.

If you are a friend of God and a servant of Jesus the Master

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you are a friend of God, then you want to obey Jesus. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

But God always does what he says he will do

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. You would expect that, when Satan tempts you to sin and you do sin, you would become the enemy of God again. Instead, God keeps his promise. He forgives the sin that you do and gives you the strength to stop sinning. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

if you confess your sins

The connecting word **if** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you confess your sins, then God will forgive you. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

confess your sins

This could be translated as: "admit to God what you have done wrong."

He will give you strength to fight against sin

This could mean 'He will give you spiritual strength to refuse to sin.'

Translation Words

- God
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - obey, obedient
 - Christian
 - tempt, temptation
 - sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
 - faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
-

49:18

God tells you to pray and to study his word. He also tells you to worship him together with other followers of Jesus. You must also tell other people what he has done for you. **If you do all these things**, you will become a strong friend of his.

If you do all these things

The connecting word **If** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you do the things God tells you to do, then you will become a strong friend of his. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Genesis 3; Matthew 13-14; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 2; 10:25-37; 15; John 3:16; Romans 3:21-26, 5:1-11; 2 Corinthians 5:17-21; Colossians 1:13-14; 1 John 1:5-10

Translation Words

- God
- pray, prayer
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture
- prostrate, worship
- Christian

50. Jesus Returns

50:00

Jesus Returns

This title can also be translated as: "About when Jesus returns to earth again" or "What will happen when Jesus returns to earth again?"

50:01

For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing. Jesus promised he would return **at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back**, he will keep his promise.

For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing.

This is background information about what has happened to the Church until today. (See: [Background Information](#))

The Church has been growing

This could also be translated as: "The number of people in the Church around the world has been increasing" or "The number of believers in Jesus has been increasing."

at the end of the world

This phrase means 'right before the present world comes to an end' or 'in the final days of this world.'

Though he has not yet come back

The connecting word **Though** introduces a contrast relationship. Jesus has not come back for 2,000 years, so you would expect he is not coming back as he promised. Instead, Jesus will come back as he promised. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [good news, gospel](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [church, Church](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
-

50:02

As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is holy and that honors him. He also wants us to tell others about his kingdom. When Jesus was living on earth, he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then **the end will come.**"

the end will come

This could be translated as: "the end of this world will come" or "the end of this world will happen" or "this present world will end."

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - God
 - holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
 - kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
 - disciple
 - preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
 - good news, gospel
-

50:03

Many people groups still have not heard about Jesus. Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told his followers to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it. He said, "Go and **make disciples** in all people groups!" and "**The fields are ripe for harvest!**"

make disciples

This has the meaning, 'help people to become my disciples.'

The fields are ripe for harvest

The words **fields** and **ripe for harvest** are metaphors. The **fields** represent people. The words **ripe for harvest** mean that people are ready to accept the message of Jesus, like fields that are ready to be harvested. Alternate translation: This could also be translated as: "They are ready to be brought to God like fields that are ripe for harvest" or "They are ready to be gathered and brought to God like fields whose crops are ripe and ready to be gathered." (See: [Metaphor](#))

The fields

In this expression, **The fields** represents the people in the world.

ripe

Ripe here represents being ready to believe in Jesus.

harvest

Harvest here represents the work of bringing people to God by teaching them about Jesus.

Translation Words

- people, people group,
 - Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
 - Christian
 - good news, gospel
 - disciple
-

50:04

Jesus also said, "A man's servant is **not greater than** his master. The important people **in this world** have hated me, and they will also torture you and kill you **because of me**. In this world you will suffer, but be strong, because I have defeated Satan, the one who rules this world. **If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you!**"

not greater than

This could mean 'not more important than' or in this case, 'not treated better than.'

because of me

This could mean 'because you obey me' or 'because you teach people about me' or 'because you belong to me.'

in this world

This could also be translated as: "in this lifetime."

If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you

The connecting word **if** introduces a hypothetical conditional relationship. If you remain faithful to the end, then God will save you. (See: [Connect - Hypothetical Conditions](#))

remain faithful to me

This could mean 'Keep obeying me.'

to the end

This could mean 'to the end of your life.'

will save you

This refers to spiritual salvation rather than physical deliverance from harm. It has already been stated that many believers will be killed or tortured.

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
 - lord, Lord, master, sir
 - suffer, suffering
 - Satan, devil, evil one
 - faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
 - save, saved, safe, salvation
-

50:05

Jesus **told his disciples a story** to explain what will happen to people when the world ends. He said, "A man planted **good seed** in his field. While he was sleeping, his enemy came and planted **weed seeds** among the **wheat seeds**, and then he went away."

told his disciples a story

The story is in the form of a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

good seed

This seed was wheat grain. If this type of seed is not known in your language area, it is best to use a general term for **seed**. If there is no general term, it may be necessary to choose a type of grain seed that is known and say, for example: "good seed like rice."

weed seeds

The weed seeds that were planted would grow up as tall grass but could not be eaten. They were useless.

wheat seeds

Wheat is a kind of grain that grows like a tall grass. It has seeds that people use for food.

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
 - disciple
 - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
-

50:06

"When the plants sprouted, the servants of the man said, '**Master, you planted good seed** in that field. So why are there weeds in it?' **The man answered, 'Only my enemies would want to plant them. It is one of my enemies who did this.'**"

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

Master, you planted good seed

Here **you** is a metonym that refers to his servants. The landowner probably had his servants plant the seeds. Alternate translation: "we planted good seed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

The man answered, 'Only my enemies would want to plant them. It is one of my enemies who did this.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The entire quotation can be restated so that this portion is an indirect quotation: "The man answered that only his enemies would want to plant them, so it was one of his enemies who did this." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

Only my enemies would want to plant them

If possible, translate this in a way that indicates that the speaker did not see this happen.

Translation Words

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

50:07

"The servants responded to their master, '**Should we pull out** the weeds?' The master said, 'No. **If you do that, you will pull out some of the wheat as well.** Wait **until the harvest.** Then gather the weeds into piles so you can burn them. But bring the wheat into my **barn.**'"

General Information

Jesus continues to tell the story.

Should we pull out

Here **we** is exclusive. It refers to the servants but not the master. The servants would not expect the master to pull weeds. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

If you do that, you will pull

Each occurrence of **you** in this frame is plural, referring to all of the servants. (See: [Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural](#))

you will pull out some of the wheat as well

This could mean 'you will accidentally pull out some of the wheat also.' It would be too difficult to distinguish young wheat from the weeds, and to pull the weeds without uprooting the wheat.

until the harvest

This could mean 'until the time when the wheat is ready to harvest' or 'until the wheat has grown enough to be harvested.'

the wheat

This could mean 'the harvested wheat grains.'

barn

This refers to the building where the harvested wheat grain was saved and stored. It could also be called a 'storehouse.' (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
 - [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
-

50:08

The disciples did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked Jesus to explain it to them. Jesus said, "The man who planted the good seed represents **the Messiah**. The field represents the world. The good seed represents **the people of God's kingdom.**"

The disciples did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked Jesus to explain it to them

The connecting word **so** introduces a reason and result relationship. The reason is the disciples did not understand the meaning of the story. The result is they asked Jesus to explain it. (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

the Messiah

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the people of God's kingdom

This refers to the people who belong to or are part of the kingdom of God. It can also be translated as: "the people who live under God's authority" or "the people who have submitted to God's rule" or "the people who will live with God in his kingdom." (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words

- [disciple](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
 - [Christ, Messiah](#)
 - [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
-

50:09

"The weeds represent the people **who belong to the devil, the evil one**. The man's enemy, the one who planted the weeds, represents the devil. The harvest **represents the end of the world**, and **the harvesters** represent God's angels."

who belong to the devil

This could mean 'who obey the devil' or 'who are ruled by the devil.'

the devil

This could also be translated as: "Satan."

the evil one

This is another title for Satan. It could be translated as: "Satan," but the title, **evil one** describes his character.

represents the end of the world

This could mean 'represents what will happen to people at the end of the world.'

the harvesters

This could also be translated as: "the men who harvest the ripe grain" or "the workers who gather in the ripe grain."

Translation Words

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [angel, archangel](#)
-

50:10

"When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people **who belong to the devil**. The angels will throw them into a very hot fire. There those people will **cry and grind their teeth** in terrible suffering. **But the people who are righteous**, who have followed Jesus, will **shine like the sun** in the kingdom of God their Father."

who belong to the devil

This could also be translated as: "who obey the devil" or "who are ruled by the devil." This refers to those who do not believe in Jesus but follow the evil ways of the devil.

cry and grind their teeth

They will **grind their teeth** as a symbolic act representing their extreme sadness and suffering. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

But the people who are righteous

The word **But** introduces an exceptional relationship. The people who are righteous because they followed Jesus will not be thrown in the fire with everyone else. (See: [Connect - Exception Clauses](#))

the people who are righteous

This refers to the people who belong to the Messiah (See: [50:08](#)).

shine like the sun

This could also be translated as: “be glorious like the sun” or “show pure goodness as the sun shows bright light.” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words

- [angel, archangel](#)
 - [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
 - [suffer, suffering](#)
 - [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
 - [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)
 - [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
-

50:11

Jesus also said that he would return to earth just before the world ends. He will come back the same way that **he left**. That is, he will have a real body, and he **will come on the clouds in the sky**. **When Jesus returns**, every follower of Jesus who has died will rise from the dead and **meet him in the sky**.

he left

This could also be translated as: “he left the earth” or “he left to go back to heaven.”

will come on the clouds in the sky

This could mean ‘the clouds in the sky will surround him as he comes’ or ‘the clouds of the sky will carry him along.’

When Jesus returns

The connecting word **When** introduces a simultaneous clause. Jesus’ followers who have died will rise and meet him in the sky at the time of Jesus’ return. (See: [Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship](#))

Jesus returns

This could mean ‘Jesus returns to the earth.’

meet him in the sky

This could mean ‘join him in the sky.’ Those who believe in Jesus will go up to be near Jesus while he is in the sky.

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [Christian](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
-

50:12

Then the followers of Jesus who are still alive will rise up into the sky and join with the other followers of Jesus who rose from the dead. They will all be with Jesus there. **After that, Jesus will live with his people.** They will have complete peace forever as they live together.

Then the followers of Jesus who are still alive

The connecting word **Then** introduces a sequential clause. After the Jesus followers who died rise to meet Jesus in the air, the Jesus followers who are still alive will also join Jesus. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

still alive

This could mean 'still alive when Jesus returns.'

After that, Jesus will live with his people

The connecting words **After that** introduce a sequential clause. After Jesus followers have joined Jesus, they will live together forever. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

Translation Words

- [Christian](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
 - [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
 - [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
-

50:13

Jesus promised to give **a crown** to everyone who believes in him. They will rule with God over everything forever. They will have **perfect** peace.

a crown

This crown represents our reward for believing in Jesus and serving him in this life.

perfect

This could mean 'complete' or 'total.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [promise, promised](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [life, live, living, alive](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
-

50:14

But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell. There they will **weep and grind their teeth**, and they will suffer forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.

But God will judge everyone who does not believe

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. In contrast to the wonderful place of peace where Jesus' followers will live, those who did not believe will suffer forever. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

weep and grind their teeth

See note on [50:10](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words

- [God](#)
 - [judge, judgment](#)
 - [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)
 - [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
 - [hell, lake of fire](#)
-

50:15

When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and **his kingdom**. He will throw Satan into hell. Satan will burn there forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him **rather than** to obey God.

When Jesus returns

The connecting word **When** introduces a sequential clause. After Jesus returns, he will destroy Satan and his kingdom. (See: [Connect - Sequential Time Relationship](#))

his kingdom

This could also be translated as: "Satan's evil rule over people" or "all the evil things he does and the evil people he controls."

rather than

This could mean 'instead of.'

Translation Words

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [hell, lake of fire](#)
- [obey, obedient](#)

- [God](#)
-

50:16

Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and **brought sin into** this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it. **But some day God will create a new heaven** and **a new earth** that will be perfect.

Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God

The connecting word **Because** connects the result (God destroyed the world), with the reason (Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into the world). (See: [Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship](#))

brought sin into

This could be translated as: "caused sin to enter."

But some day God will create

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. It is expected that God will destroy the world because of sin. Instead of leaving it destroyed, God creates a new heaven and a new earth. (See: [Connect - Contrast Relationship](#))

a new heaven

This could also be translated as: "a new sky" or "a new universe." It refers to a new set of stars and everything else in the sky.

a new earth

This current earth on which we live will be replaced by a new and improved one.

Translation Words

- [Adam](#)
 - [Eve](#)
 - [disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious](#)
 - [God](#)
 - [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
 - [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
 - [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
-

50:17

Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything. He will **wipe away every tear** from people's eyes. No one will suffer or be sad any longer. They will not cry. They will not be sick or die. And there will be nothing evil there. Jesus will **rule his kingdom justly and with peace**. He will be with his people forever.

wipe away every tear

This could also be translated as: “bring an end to all of our grief” or “make trouble end” or “tenderly take away any sadness people have.”

rule his kingdom justly and with peace

This could also be translated as: “rule over his people fairly, in a way that brings them peace.”

A Bible story from

These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:24-42; 22:13; 24:14; 28:18; John 4:35; 15:20; 16:33; 1 Thessalonians 4:13-5:11; James 1:12; Revelation 2:10; 20:10; 21-22

Translation Words

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- suffer, suffering
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

| ...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

| But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

| Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

| The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

| He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [32:16](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [02:12](#); [04:04](#); [11:02](#); [15:05](#); [23:02](#); [24:08](#); [25:04](#); [27:01](#); [27:02](#); [32:14](#); [38:08](#); [40:02](#); [40:07](#); [43:03](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [46:09](#); [47:11](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a **speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [02:06](#); [05:06](#); [05:08](#); [08:06](#); [08:07](#); [14:05](#); [22:02](#); [23:01](#); [23:02](#); [24:05](#); [25:02](#); [25:03](#); [25:04](#); [25:06](#); [25:07](#); [27:03](#); [27:06](#); [27:07](#); [27:08](#); [28:07](#); [28:10](#); [29:03](#); [29:08](#); [30:07](#); [31:07](#); [31:08](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [33:07](#); [34:01](#); [34:03](#); [34:04](#); [34:06](#); [34:07](#); [35:07](#); [35:09](#); [35:12](#); [35:13](#); [36:05](#); [37:01](#); [37:10](#); [38:04](#); [38:08](#); [38:12](#); [38:14](#); [39:06](#); [40:02](#); [40:03](#); [40:05](#); [41:03](#); [43:03](#); [44:01](#); [44:02](#); [45:09](#); [46:01](#); [46:07](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: 07:01; 07:07; 08:04; 08:06; 09:02; 13:01; 13:08; 14:01; 14:02; 15:01; 17:01; 17:02; 17:12; 18:01; 19:01; 21:15; 22:01; 22:04; 23:04; 23:05; 23:09; 24:01; 26:05; 26:06; 27:07; 27:08; 30:02; 32:03; 32:07; 36:04; 37:01; 37:02; 37:04; 37:07; 37:10; 38:01; 38:02; 38:03; 38:14; 40:09; 43:02; 45:01; 45:06; 45:07; 46:01; 47:01; 50:01)

Connect - Background Information

Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses that give background information?*

Background Clause

Definition

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing, and then another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event, because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, which is the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are "now", "when", "while", and "during". Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are "in those days" and "at that time".

Examples from OBS and the Bible

When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshipping other gods is the main event.

Now his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem for the Festival of the Passover. When he was twelve years old, they again went up at the customary time for the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words “every year.” Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time “when he was twelve years old.” So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival *when he was twelve years old*.

Now it came about that **while** they were there, the time came for the birth of her baby. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

...**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words “while” and “during.” Then the main event happens: “the word of God came to John”.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

1. If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
2. If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

...**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

...**It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

...Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

Example of differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Background setting	The word of Yahweh was rare in those days ;
Background repeated	there was no vision breaking through.
Introduction of main event	It happened at that time,
Background	when Eli was lying down in his place
Simultaneous background	and his eyes had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	and the lamp of God had not yet gone out,
Simultaneous background	and Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	Yahweh called to Samuel,
Sequential event	who said, "here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." Then there are several lines of short-term background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more are connected to the first one by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

(Go back to: [07:08](#); [18:03](#); [18:12](#); [22:04](#); [48:06](#); [48:09](#))

Connect - Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

Contrast relationship

Definition

A Contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason this is a translation issue

In Scripture, many events do not happen as the people involved intend or expect them to happen. Sometimes people act in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it is God at work changing the events. These events are often pivotal and it is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English Contrast Relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples from OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave and the humble way that he behaves, marked by the word “yet.”

...and **though** he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness. (Luke 8:29 ULT)

It is unexpected that someone who is bound with chains will be able to break them. The word “though” marks the contrast of an unexpected event.

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the God of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for God. **However**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands, (Acts 7:46-48 ULT)

There are two contrasts here, both marked with “however.” The first contrast shows that even though David asked to find a place for God’s house, it was Solomon who built it. But then there is another contrast. Even though Solomon built a house for God, God does not live in houses that people build.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Contrast Relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

1. If the Contrast Relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

2. If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the Contrast Relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
3. If your language shows a Contrast Relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1.If the Contrast Relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

2.If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the Contrast Relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

...and **though** he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness. (Luke 8:29 ULT)

...and he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, **but even so**, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness.

3.If your language shows a Contrast Relationship in a different way, then use that way.

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the God of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for God. **However**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands, (Acts 7:46-48 ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the God of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **But even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands,

(Go back to: 07:01; 07:03; 07:06; 07:10; 08:05; 08:11; 08:12; 09:10; 10:01; 10:03; 12:10; 13:10; 14:07; 14:12; 15:06; 15:07; 16:06; 16:10; 16:16; 16:18; 17:07; 17:09; 17:10; 17:11; 17:14; 18:03; 18:06; 18:13; 19:04; 19:08; 19:14; 19:17; 19:18; 20:01; 20:05; 20:10; 21:01; 21:07; 21:08; 21:12; 21:13; 21:15; 23:01; 23:03; 24:09; 42:01; 42:02; 43:05; 43:06; 43:09; 44:06; 44:08; 46:08; 47:08; 47:10; 48:03; 48:04; 48:05; 48:08; 48:14; 49:01; 49:09; 49:10; 49:12; 49:17; 50:01; 50:14; 50:16)

Connect - Exception Clauses

Exceptional relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

Definition

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude an item(s) or person(s) from a group.

Reason this is a translation issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group using words like “except,” “but not” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however...not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate that one or more items or people are excluded from a group in this way, but instead have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense, because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me, so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you." (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** four hundred young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

1. Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”
2. Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped** except for

four hundred young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** four hundred young men)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. Only four hundred young men escaped, who rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me, so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you." (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me, so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it [only you can redeem it]**, and I am after you."

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

(Go back to: [14:06](#); [14:09](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [48:06](#); [49:13](#); [50:10](#))

Connect - Factual Conditions

Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate factual conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if...then". Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Factual Conditions

Definition

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker's mind. In English, Factual Conditions can use the words "even though", "since", or "this being the case" to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This will lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers will misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than a conditional statement.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

"**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is "if Yahweh is God." If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship Him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

"A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If I**, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If I** am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with "if", it is not. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part, then use a statement instead. Words such as “since” or “you know that...” or “it is true that...” can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

“**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!” (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

“**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!”

"A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

"A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?"

(Go back to: [15:03](#); [24:07](#))

Connect - Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Definition

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a Goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason this is a translation issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are "in order to," "in order that" or "so that." It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph ***so that he was arrested and sent to prison.***
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The Goal or Purpose of the woman's false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Gideon, Joash's son, was separating out the wheat by beating it on the floor, in the winepress
—***to hide it from the Midianites.*** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with only the word "to" but "in order to" is understood.

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways ***so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.*** Remember that this nation is your people." (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the Goal or Purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

"Also pull out for her some grain from the bundles, and leave it ***for her to glean,*** and do not rebuke her." (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The Goal or Purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

...the shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go to Bethlehem, ***and see this thing that has happened,*** which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The Purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the Purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“...if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17 ULT)

The Goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be successful** wherever you go. (Joshua 1:7 ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be successful.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The Purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the Goal or Purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

1. If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
2. If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Also pull out for her some grain from the bundles, and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her.” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Also pull out for her some grain from the bundles, and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her.”

...the shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go to Bethlehem, **and see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

...the shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go to Bethlehem, **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“...if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17 ULT)

“...keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “...keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [12:14](#); [43:11](#))

Connect - Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate hypothetical conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if...then". Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Definition

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason this is a translation issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the right way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not they obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated second. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is if he does what is right.

...**if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38-39 ULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

1. If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.
2. If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then".

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, God promised to bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then”.

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised to bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

...**if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38-39 ULT)

...**if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

(Go back to: [13:02](#); [13:10](#); [14:03](#); [19:07](#); [19:16](#); [41:01](#); [42:08](#); [49:12](#); [49:15](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#); [49:18](#); [50:04](#))

Connect - Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Definition

A Reason-and-Result Relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason this is a translation issue

A Reason-and-Result Relationship can look forward - "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward - "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the Reason either before or after the Result. Many languages have a preferred order for the Reason and the Result, and it is confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a Reason-and-Result Relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a Goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a Goal relationship and a Reason-and-Result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **Reason** is the change in Saul - that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **Result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a Reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.
(Matthew 8:24 ULT)

The **Reason** is the great storm, and the **Result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a Goal relationship, but here the relationship is Reason-and-Result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a Goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **Result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **Reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

"Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

The **Result** is that the poor are blessed. The **Reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

It was their children that Yahweh raised up in their place that Joshua circumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **Result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **Reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Reason-and-Result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

1. If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
2. If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear Connecting Word.
3. If it is more clear to put a Connecting Word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24 ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34 ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: 07:03; 07:05; 07:06; 08:02; 08:03; 08:11; 09:02; 09:04; 09:13; 09:15; 10:02; 10:12; 12:03; 12:07; 12:10; 12:12; 12:13; 13:05; 13:12; 14:08; 14:09; 14:10; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 15:03; 15:07; 16:01; 16:02; 16:06; 16:07; 16:09; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:14; 16:16; 17:04; 17:07; 17:08; 17:12; 17:13; 18:01; 18:04; 19:02; 19:04; 19:07; 19:15; 20:07; 22:03; 23:02; 23:03; 23:09; 43:10; 43:11; 44:06; 45:02; 45:12; 46:06; 47:07; 47:10; 47:12; 48:02; 48:07; 48:11; 48:13; 49:10; 49:11; 49:13; 50:08; 50:16)

Connect - Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

Sequential Clause

Definition

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense. Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as "then", "later", "after", "afterward", "before", "first", and "when". Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

When Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders.
(OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word, **when**. The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter.
(Revelation 10:10 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word, **after**. The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word, **before**. However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so the clauses come in the order that they will happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events - each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector, "and," is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

1. If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
2. If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see [Sequence of Events](#).

(Go back to: 07:04; 07:10; 08:02; 08:03; 08:04; 08:12; 12:06; 12:11; 15:03; 15:04; 15:05; 15:11; 15:12; 16:08; 16:12; 16:13; 16:18; 17:03; 17:13; 18:05; 19:09; 19:11; 19:13; 19:15; 20:08; 22:03; 22:06; 22:07; 23:07; 23:08; 24:03; 41:01; 41:04; 43:01; 44:03; 47:05; 50:12; 50:15)

Connect - Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate clauses with a simultaneous time relationship?*

Simultaneous Clause

Definition

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages indicate that events occur simultaneously in many different ways. These may vary based on whether or not something is causing them to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as "while," "as," and "during". Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not so that you can communicate it clearly. A Simultaneous Clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a Reason-and-Result relationship.

Examples from OBS and the Bible

Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a Reason-and-Result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

But in truth I tell you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the time of Elijah... (Luke 4:25 ULT)

This tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, because of the connecting word, **during**. But one event did not cause the other.

Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delay in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector, **and**, indicates this.

And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, behold, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time - the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Simultaneous Clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the Simultaneous Clauses as they are.

1. If the connecting word does not make it clear that the Simultaneous Clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

2. If it is not clear which clause the Simultaneous Clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
3. If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the Translation Strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the Translation Strategy that it is using.

Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delay in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

- (1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delay in the temple.
- (2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delay in the temple.
- (3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delay in the temple.

And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, behold, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

- (1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, behold, two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, behold, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.
- (3) They were looking intently into heaven, he was going up, **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

(Go back to: [19:03](#); [23:10](#); [41:05](#); [43:03](#); [46:05](#); [50:11](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- **Sequential Clause** – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- **Simultaneous Clause** – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- **Background Clause** – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- **Exceptional Relationship** – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- **Hypothetical Condition** – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- **Factual Condition** – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- **Contrary to Fact Condition** – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: **Hypothetical Statements**.
- **Goal Relationship** – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- **Reason and Result Relationship** – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- **Contrast Relationship** – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

**Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.”
Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so”.

Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore

whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.
And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [17:04](#); [17:05](#); [17:08](#); [46:03](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...** "

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.** "
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Pronouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

“ (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: 01:02; 01:05; 02:02; 02:03; 02:04; 02:07; 02:08; 03:13; 03:15; 04:04; 04:06; 04:07; 04:09; 05:01; 05:03; 05:04; 05:06; 05:07; 05:08; 05:10; 06:06; 07:02; 08:07; 09:12; 10:08; 11:08; 12:05; 14:05; 14:13; 15:02; 16:07; 16:11; 18:06; 19:02; 19:12; 19:13; 22:03; 22:05; 23:06; 23:07; 24:02; 24:07; 24:09; 25:02; 25:03; 25:04; 25:05; 25:06; 25:07; 26:03; 26:04; 26:05; 26:06; 26:09; 27:01; 27:02; 27:03; 27:11; 28:01; 28:02; 28:03; 28:04; 28:06; 28:07; 28:08; 28:09; 28:10; 29:01; 29:02; 29:09; 30:04; 30:05; 30:06; 31:04; 31:05; 31:08; 32:05; 32:11; 32:15; 36:06; 37:07; 38:06; 38:09; 38:10; 38:13; 39:09; 41:02; 42:05)

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was ***old*** and ***advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men ***more righteous*** and ***better*** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare ***false*** and ***deceptive*** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb ***without blemish*** and ***without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare ***false*** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

█ **King David** was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

█ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

█ ...**a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

█ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [01:09](#); [44:09](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [27:02](#); [27:11](#); [32:10](#); [38:09](#))

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

Different purposes for end of story information

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. ***In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.*** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. ***So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.*** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary said, "My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." **Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [45:05](#); [45:12](#); [45:13](#); [47:13](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [08:05](#); [13:06](#); [14:03](#); [17:11](#); [23:03](#); [32:13](#); [40:07](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” (Mark 7:36 ULT)

“They were absolutely astonished, saying, **‘Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, **“Ah,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

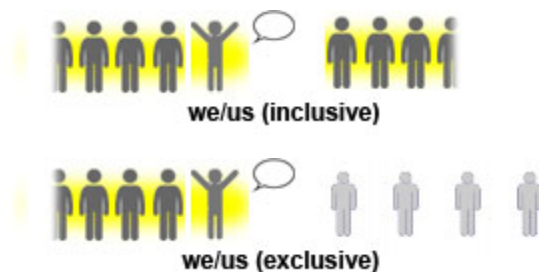
(Go back to: 08:08; 08:12; 10:01; 11:08; 12:04; 12:05; 12:10; 13:12; 14:05; 14:06; 15:05; 16:07; 16:11; 16:13; 17:03; 17:07; 19:05; 19:06; 19:08; 19:11; 19:12; 20:12; 22:02; 22:07; 23:06; 24:02; 24:06; 26:09; 28:06; 29:08; 30:05; 35:03; 35:09; 35:12; 35:13; 37:02; 37:09; 37:10; 38:09; 39:04; 39:05; 39:06; 39:07; 39:12; 41:05; 42:05; 43:06; 45:02; 45:03; 46:04; 47:06)

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

When Jesus said "us", he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [32:07](#); [36:04](#); [40:04](#); [43:07](#); [44:04](#); [47:10](#); [50:07](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [50:08](#))

Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is dual or plural?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of You](#)

[Pronouns](#)

[[r://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons this is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples from the Bible

James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, “Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you.” He [Jesus] said to them, “What do **you** * want me to do for

you*?” (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the **two**, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a **dual** form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

...and Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, “Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.” (Mark 11:1-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing **two** people. If the target language has a **dual** form of “you,” use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes of the Dispersion, greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles, knowing that the testing of **your** faith works endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word “you” refers to many people. If the target language has a **plural** form of “you,” it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

1. Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
2. Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
3. If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
4. Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [41:06](#); [50:07](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]
[Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural](#)

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [18:06](#); [42:06](#); [42:10](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, **“Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [03:13](#); [11:08](#); [14:04](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [08:15](#); [09:02](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

█ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [19:05](#); [19:06](#); [28:06](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...;” “What if the sun stopped shining...;” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...;” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! ***If the mighty deeds had been done*** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, ***they would have repented*** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that ***if*** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [37:04](#); [37:06](#); [38:09](#); [40:05](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [01:14](#); [02:06](#); [12:03](#); [15:02](#); [15:07](#); [17:01](#); [29:09](#); [30:07](#); [30:08](#); [31:06](#); [32:06](#); [32:16](#); [37:02](#); [43:05](#); [43:08](#); [44:08](#))

Imperatives - Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, “light must be”.

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

...**do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go,
 and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

Be clean. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

"You are now clean."
 "I now cleanse you."

God said, "Let there be

light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, "**There is now light** " and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful

, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful, and multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
 God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

"**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

(Go back to: [01:02](#); [01:05](#); [01:08](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. **His wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a **Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council**. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: 08:01; 09:01; 09:02; 13:01; 14:13; 14:14; 15:01; 15:07; 15:13; 16:01; 16:04; 17:04; 17:05; 17:10; 17:14; 18:01; 19:17; 20:11; 22:01; 24:01; 25:01; 26:01; 27:01; 28:01; 29:01; 31:01; 35:01; 36:01; 37:01; 38:11; 39:01; 40:01; 43:01; 43:02; 44:01; 45:02; 45:07; 46:02; 46:06; 46:07; 46:08; 46:10; 47:01; 47:05; 47:09)

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now ***there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man*** came to Jesus at night time...
Jesus replied to ***him*** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. ***His wife*** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so ***she*** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh...(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement). (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

It happened when he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(Go back to: [14:02](#); [17:01](#); [17:02](#); [17:10](#); [17:12](#); [19:01](#); [19:14](#); [20:02](#); [20:06](#); [22:01](#); [22:05](#); [23:09](#); [27:01](#); [27:04](#); [27:06](#); [27:07](#); [27:08](#); [28:01](#); [32:13](#); [35:03](#); [37:01](#); [40:09](#); [42:10](#); [44:01](#); [45:01](#); [45:07](#); [46:01](#); [46:04](#); [47:01](#); [47:03](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.***" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [39:12](#); [40:05](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [45:05](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

▮ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

▮ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

▮ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

▮ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [02:04](#); [02:12](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

■ **I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

■ I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [10:04](#); [12:02](#); [13:02](#); [21:05](#); [24:04](#); [24:06](#); [28:04](#); [32:06](#); [33:06](#); [33:07](#); [33:08](#); [33:09](#); [35:09](#); [35:13](#); [38:08](#); [38:12](#); [44:05](#); [47:04](#); [50:03](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from **the wrath** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [04:04](#); [16:13](#); [19:14](#); [21:05](#); [24:06](#); [29:09](#); [36:05](#); [38:09](#); [40:04](#); [40:07](#); [42:10](#); [44:02](#); [46:04](#); [47:05](#); [50:06](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [28:04](#); [41:06](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language’s words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [08:15](#); [16:10](#); [16:14](#); [17:06](#); [17:08](#); [18:03](#); [19:06](#); [20:06](#); [20:12](#); [21:15](#); [25:01](#); [28:10](#); [29:01](#); [29:02](#); [30:03](#); [30:06](#); [30:09](#); [32:08](#); [33:05](#))

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll *after* breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua *had commanded* the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [32:14](#))

Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See [Translate Unknowns](#).)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand

.” (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on **a high shelf**.”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed

in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Jesus said to them

, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”. (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(Go back to: [27:04](#); [29:01](#); [33:02](#); [34:01](#); [34:03](#); [34:06](#); [35:02](#); [50:05](#))

Possession

Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**”, by using an apostrophe and the letter **s**, or by using a possessive pronoun.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather**'s** house
- **his** house

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
 - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
 - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
 - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head - the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

█ ...the younger son...wasted **his money** with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

█ Then **the disciples of John** came to him..., (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

█ On their heads were something like **crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

█ Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

█ But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace** (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)

Part of a group - In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

█ To *each one of us* has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, *John baptized people*.

█ The baptism

* of John*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, *Christ loves us*.

█ Who will separate us from *the *love* of Christ*? (Romans 3:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, *people love money*.

█ For *the *love* of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would *punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords*.

█ then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings *the *punishment* of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULT)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their *baptism represented their repentance*.

█ As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching *a *baptism* of repentance* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

█ **On their heads were something like** crowns of gold

(Revelation 9:7)

“On their heads were gold

* crowns* “

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

...**Whoever gives you** a cup of water

to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

...Whoever gives you **a cup that *has** water in it* to drink...will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God *shows** his wrath.* **Wealth is worthless on the** day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath

**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh your God *punished** the people of Egypt.*

You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked

. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh *punishes** the wicked*.

...you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit

. (Acts 2:38 ULT)

...you will receive **the Holy Spirit, whom God will *give** to you*.

(Go back to: [07:03](#); [07:05](#); [07:06](#); [07:07](#); [07:08](#); [08:01](#); [08:03](#); [09:01](#); [17:02](#); [17:05](#); [17:07](#); [17:08](#); [18:05](#); [18:07](#); [18:08](#); [19:06](#); [47:09](#); [50:08](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw** himself

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [01:09](#); [02:02](#); [02:03](#); [02:04](#); [02:07](#); [02:12](#); [12:05](#); [28:04](#); [29:09](#); [30:05](#); [39:04](#); [45:08](#); [47:07](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [26:05](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "***He is my brother.***"'" (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: '***Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.***"'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [09:14](#); [10:01](#); [25:03](#); [25:04](#); [25:05](#); [25:07](#); [27:10](#); [29:03](#); [29:04](#); [29:05](#); [29:06](#); [29:08](#); [32:15](#); [34:07](#); [34:08](#); [34:09](#); [35:03](#); [35:06](#); [35:08](#); [35:09](#); [41:06](#); [43:05](#); [43:07](#); [50:06](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***“Is this how you insult God’s high priest?”*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God’s high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man’s property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man’s property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [02:02](#); [02:07](#); [02:08](#); [12:04](#); [14:07](#); [16:07](#); [19:06](#); [26:04](#); [28:01](#); [28:07](#); [30:05](#); [31:07](#); [32:06](#); [37:08](#); [38:14](#); [39:10](#); [40:04](#); [42:06](#); [46:02](#))

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [24:08](#); [27:02](#); [28:02](#); [29:02](#); [30:03](#); [33:08](#); [34:01](#); [34:03](#); [34:04](#); [34:05](#); [36:02](#); [41:04](#); [50:10](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [23:10](#); [24:01](#); [25:06](#); [29:04](#); [29:06](#); [32:05](#); [32:16](#); [34:09](#); [35:09](#); [37:06](#); [39:04](#); [39:05](#); [39:12](#); [41:08](#); [42:11](#); [45:04](#); [45:05](#); [46:05](#); [46:10](#); [50:10](#); [50:14](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

“Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night ***a fourth animal***, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had ***large iron teeth***; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ***ten horns***. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, ‘As for the fourth animal, it will be ***a fourth kingdom*** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ***ten kings*** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw ***seven golden lampstands***. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand ***seven stars***, and coming out of his mouth was ***a sharp two-edged sword***...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: ***the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches***, and ***the seven lampstands are the seven churches***. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [38:04](#); [38:05](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

█ **My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

█ **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

█ I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

█ “My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

█ “**I** exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

█ **...a representative of the Pharisees** said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [10:04](#); [13:11](#); [25:02](#); [25:03](#); [46:07](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals.**

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

▮ We have here only five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

▮ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

▮ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

▮ We have here only five **loaves of baked food** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

▮ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

▮ to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [07:08](#); [09:06](#); [09:12](#); [09:14](#); [10:05](#); [10:08](#); [10:10](#); [13:10](#); [13:14](#); [14:04](#); [14:05](#); [14:11](#); [15:02](#); [15:09](#); [17:05](#); [21:09](#); [21:11](#); [23:01](#); [34:01](#); [41:02](#); [41:04](#); [47:03](#); [50:07](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the *Father* and *Son*, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [22:05](#); [24:08](#); [24:09](#); [25:02](#); [25:04](#); [26:09](#); [29:09](#); [31:08](#); [32:06](#); [36:05](#); [37:05](#); [37:09](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [39:03](#); [39:04](#); [40:02](#); [40:05](#); [40:07](#); [40:08](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:08](#); [46:06](#); [49:01](#); [49:03](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [09:15](#); [10:01](#); [10:05](#); [10:08](#); [11:08](#); [13:09](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [14:07](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [04:04](#); [04:05](#); [04:06](#); [04:07](#); [04:08](#); [04:09](#); [05:01](#); [05:02](#); [05:03](#); [05:04](#); [05:05](#); [05:06](#); [05:07](#); [05:08](#); [05:09](#); [05:10](#); [06:01](#); [06:02](#); [06:04](#); [07:10](#); [08:15](#); [09:13](#); [09:14](#); [14:02](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#); [21:02](#); [45:03](#); [48:07](#); [48:08](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), [Eve](#), image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:14
- Genesis 03:17
- Genesis 05:01
- Genesis 11:05
- Luke 03:38
- Romans 05:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:09** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **01:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **02:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **02:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:08** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, G76

(Go back to: [01:10](#); [01:11](#); [01:12](#); [01:13](#); [01:14](#); [02:01](#); [02:07](#); [02:11](#); [02:12](#); [21:01](#); [48:01](#); [48:02](#); [48:03](#); [50:16](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), sexual immorality, sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: [13:06](#); [28:02](#); [34:07](#))

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:06
- 2 Kings 09:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:03 Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H256

(Go back to: [19:02](#); [19:03](#); [19:05](#); [19:13](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [03:14](#); [05:08](#); [13:09](#); [16:06](#); [16:07](#); [19:09](#); [19:11](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [15:07](#); [15:08](#); [15:09](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [02:12](#); [16:05](#); [22:01](#); [22:02](#); [22:03](#); [22:04](#); [22:05](#); [22:06](#); [22:07](#); [23:01](#); [23:02](#); [23:06](#); [23:07](#); [23:08](#); [25:04](#); [25:08](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [41:04](#); [41:05](#); [41:06](#); [45:07](#); [50:09](#); [50:10](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: authority, [disciple](#), James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [26:10](#); [30:01](#); [38:02](#); [43:13](#); [46:08](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

(Go back to: [20:02](#); [20:03](#); [20:04](#); [20:06](#))

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G896

(Go back to: [19:02](#); [19:05](#); [19:06](#); [19:07](#); [19:08](#); [19:12](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [20:06](#); [20:07](#); [20:08](#); [20:09](#); [20:11](#))

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G907

(Go back to: [24:03](#); [24:06](#); [24:07](#); [24:08](#); [24:09](#); [25:01](#); [36:01](#); [42:10](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [45:11](#); [45:12](#); [46:05](#); [47:02](#); [47:12](#); [49:14](#))

Barnabas

Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [Levite](#), [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:03
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:08** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:09** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G921

(Go back to: [46:08](#); [46:09](#); [46:10](#))

Bathsheba

Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:4-5
- 1 Kings 01:11
- 2 Samuel 11:03
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:10** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **17:11** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **17:12** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **17:13** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **17:14** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1339

(Go back to: [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#))

beg, beggar, needy

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

(Go back to: [10:04](#); [29:08](#); [32:07](#); [32:10](#); [35:11](#); [44:01](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [04:08](#); [11:01](#); [11:02](#); [11:06](#); [12:01](#); [12:12](#); [15:01](#); [20:05](#); [22:03](#); [22:05](#); [33:09](#); [37:03](#); [37:04](#); [37:05](#); [37:08](#); [37:09](#); [37:10](#); [40:05](#); [40:09](#); [42:01](#); [43:01](#); [43:03](#); [43:04](#); [43:12](#); [43:13](#); [44:06](#); [45:01](#); [45:06](#); [45:07](#); [46:01](#); [46:06](#); [46:08](#); [46:10](#); [47:02](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:14](#); [48:05](#); [48:07](#); [48:10](#); [48:11](#); [49:09](#); [49:12](#); [49:13](#); [49:14](#); [49:15](#); [50:13](#); [50:14](#))

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:06** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H672, H1035, G965

(Go back to: [17:02](#); [21:09](#); [23:04](#); [23:05](#); [23:06](#); [23:09](#))

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7411, G3860, G4273

(Go back to: [21:11](#); [38:02](#); [38:03](#); [38:06](#); [38:13](#); [38:14](#); [39:08](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [01:07](#); [01:15](#); [01:16](#); [03:14](#); [04:04](#); [04:07](#); [05:10](#); [07:03](#); [07:04](#); [07:05](#); [08:04](#); [08:05](#); [08:14](#); [09:03](#); [13:07](#); [17:05](#); [17:07](#); [17:08](#); [17:09](#); [21:02](#); [48:07](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [11:03](#); [11:05](#); [13:09](#); [38:05](#); [38:12](#); [48:09](#); [48:10](#))

Caleb

Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hebron, [Joshua](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:13
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:12
- Numbers 32:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!"
- **14:08** "Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
so that they could live at peace in that land.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

(Go back to: [14:06](#); [14:07](#); [14:08](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [04:05](#); [04:06](#); [04:09](#); [05:01](#); [05:03](#); [07:08](#); [07:10](#); [08:10](#); [09:13](#); [14:01](#); [14:02](#); [14:03](#); [14:04](#); [14:05](#); [14:06](#); [14:09](#); [14:10](#); [15:01](#); [15:05](#); [15:06](#); [15:07](#); [15:11](#); [16:01](#); [20:05](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [12:10](#); [45:07](#); [45:08](#); [45:11](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: 17:07; 17:08; 19:18; 21:01; 21:02; 21:03; 21:04; 21:05; 21:06; 21:07; 21:08; 21:09; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 22:02; 23:06; 24:05; 26:04; 37:05; 38:02; 39:03; 40:09; 42:01; 42:03; 42:07; 43:07; 43:09; 44:05; 44:08; 45:03; 46:06; 48:04; 48:13; 49:14; 50:01; 50:08)

Christian

Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means, “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: Antioch, [Christ](#), [church](#), [disciple](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
- 1 Peter 04:16
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 26:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:09** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians.**”
- **47:14** Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian!**
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.
- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5546

(Go back to: [46:09](#); [47:14](#); [49:15](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#); [49:18](#); [50:03](#); [50:11](#); [50:12](#))

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), [Christian](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [43:12](#); [45:01](#); [46:09](#); [46:10](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [50:01](#))

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [05:03](#); [05:05](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [04:09](#); [05:03](#); [05:04](#); [06:04](#); [07:10](#); [08:15](#); [13:02](#); [13:04](#); [14:01](#); [15:13](#); [20:01](#); [21:05](#); [21:14](#); [38:05](#); [48:11](#))

CROSS

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: [40:01](#); [40:02](#); [40:05](#); [49:10](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#))

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [40:01](#); [40:04](#); [41:01](#); [43:06](#); [43:09](#); [44:08](#))

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(Go back to: [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [21:10](#); [26:06](#); [26:08](#); [30:03](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [32:16](#); [38:15](#); [44:03](#); [44:04](#); [44:08](#); [49:02](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [02:09](#); [02:11](#); [03:15](#); [04:04](#); [39:07](#); [50:16](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [17:02](#); [17:03](#); [17:04](#); [17:05](#); [17:06](#); [17:07](#); [17:08](#); [17:09](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [18:01](#); [18:02](#); [18:13](#); [21:04](#); [21:08](#); [23:04](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [16:03](#); [16:16](#))

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: [26:09](#); [32:05](#); [32:07](#); [32:08](#); [32:09](#); [47:03](#); [47:05](#); [49:02](#))

demon-possessed

Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:02** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:06** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:09** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:03** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1139

(Go back to: [32:02](#); [32:06](#); [47:03](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), ancestor, [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [02:09](#); [04:06](#); [04:08](#); [04:09](#); [05:03](#); [05:10](#); [06:04](#); [08:15](#); [09:01](#); [13:09](#); [14:02](#); [17:07](#); [18:13](#); [20:04](#); [21:01](#); [21:04](#); [48:04](#); [48:07](#); [48:13](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [01:11](#); [02:03](#); [02:04](#); [02:11](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [35:09](#); [35:13](#); [36:03](#); [36:07](#); [37:01](#); [37:03](#); [37:04](#); [37:05](#); [37:06](#); [37:07](#); [38:10](#); [39:05](#); [40:07](#); [40:08](#); [41:01](#); [41:04](#); [41:05](#); [41:06](#); [42:07](#); [43:07](#); [44:05](#); [45:05](#); [48:01](#); [48:02](#); [48:08](#); [49:02](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#); [50:11](#); [50:12](#); [50:17](#))

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

(Go back to: 28:06; 28:07; 28:08; 30:02; 30:04; 30:05; 30:06; 30:08; 30:09; 31:01; 31:02; 31:04; 31:08; 32:01; 32:15; 33:06; 36:01; 36:05; 36:07; 37:02; 37:03; 38:01; 38:02; 38:04; 38:06; 38:08; 38:10; 38:11; 38:13; 38:15; 41:01; 41:06; 41:07; 41:08; 42:01; 42:05; 42:06; 42:08; 42:10; 42:11; 43:01; 43:05; 43:10; 43:12; 43:13; 45:07; 46:04; 46:08; 50:02; 50:03; 50:05; 50:08)

disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: [02:11](#); [13:07](#); [13:09](#); [16:01](#); [16:02](#); [18:03](#); [35:12](#); [45:03](#); [50:16](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(Go back to: [08:02](#); [08:06](#); [08:07](#); [16:11](#); [23:01](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [08:04](#); [08:06](#); [08:08](#); [08:10](#); [08:11](#); [08:12](#); [08:14](#); [09:01](#); [09:02](#); [09:03](#); [09:08](#); [09:10](#); [09:11](#); [09:13](#); [10:02](#); [10:04](#); [10:05](#); [10:06](#); [10:07](#); [10:08](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [11:03](#); [11:04](#); [11:06](#); [11:07](#); [11:08](#); [12:01](#); [12:04](#); [12:06](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [13:04](#); [14:07](#); [38:01](#); [48:09](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:02 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

(Go back to: [19:02](#); [19:03](#); [19:04](#); [19:05](#); [19:06](#); [19:07](#); [19:09](#); [19:10](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [26:05](#); [36:03](#); [36:04](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Edom, [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:05
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 09:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **07:02** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **07:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

(Go back to: [06:07](#); [07:01](#); [07:02](#); [07:03](#); [07:04](#); [07:05](#); [07:06](#); [07:09](#); [07:10](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [27:01](#); [28:01](#); [28:10](#))

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:13** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **02:02** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **02:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:01** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **48:02** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:08** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2332, G2096

(Go back to: [02:11](#); [02:12](#); [21:01](#); [48:01](#); [48:02](#); [48:03](#); [48:04](#); [50:16](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [01:11](#); [02:03](#); [02:04](#); [02:12](#); [03:15](#); [04:02](#); [08:12](#); [14:02](#); [17:13](#); [18:13](#); [19:02](#); [19:16](#); [29:08](#); [45:02](#); [50:09](#); [50:17](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [09:12](#); [16:09](#); [17:02](#); [30:03](#); [38:08](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [05:06](#); [31:07](#); [32:16](#); [38:09](#); [44:04](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [08:05](#); [14:12](#); [15:13](#); [17:09](#); [17:14](#); [18:07](#); [35:12](#); [49:17](#); [50:04](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [25:01](#); [34:08](#); [46:10](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [07:10](#); [13:15](#); [17:13](#); [21:05](#); [22:07](#); [29:01](#); [29:08](#); [29:09](#); [38:05](#); [38:12](#); [40:02](#); [42:08](#); [43:11](#); [49:11](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [21:02](#); [24:04](#); [40:03](#); [42:07](#); [43:05](#); [43:07](#); [44:05](#))

Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1551, G1056, G1057

(Go back to: [21:10](#); [26:01](#); [26:08](#); [39:06](#); [41:06](#); [41:08](#))

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [15:06](#); [15:07](#); [15:08](#))

Gideon

Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Asherah](#), [deliver](#), [Midian](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 06:11
- Judges 06:23
- Judges 08:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:05** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."
- **16:06** **Gideon's** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **16:08** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **16:08** **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **16:10** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **16:12** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **16:15** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **16:16** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1439, H1441

(Go back to: [16:05](#); [16:06](#); [16:07](#); [16:08](#); [16:09](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [23:07](#); [25:06](#); [37:01](#); [37:08](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: 01:01; 01:02; 01:03; 01:04; 01:05; 01:06; 01:07; 01:08; 01:09; 01:10; 01:11; 01:12; 01:13; 01:15; 01:16; 02:01; 02:02; 02:03; 02:04; 02:07; 02:08; 02:09; 02:10; 02:11; 02:12; 03:01; 03:02; 03:03; 03:04; 03:06; 03:13; 03:14; 03:15; 03:16; 04:01; 04:02; 04:03; 04:04; 04:05; 04:06; 04:07; 04:08; 04:09; 05:01; 05:02; 05:03; 05:04; 05:05; 05:06; 05:07; 05:08; 05:09; 05:10; 06:02; 06:04; 06:05; 06:06; 07:07; 07:10; 08:04; 08:05; 08:07; 08:12; 08:15; 09:03; 09:12; 09:13; 09:14; 09:15; 10:01; 10:02; 10:03; 10:04; 10:05; 10:06; 10:07; 10:08; 10:10; 10:11; 10:12; 11:01; 11:02; 11:03; 11:04; 11:05; 11:06; 12:01; 12:02; 12:03; 12:05; 12:06; 12:07; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 13:01; 13:02; 13:03; 13:04; 13:05; 13:07; 13:08; 13:09; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 14:01; 14:02; 14:03; 14:06; 14:08; 14:09; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 15:01; 15:02; 15:03; 15:05; 15:06; 15:07; 15:09; 15:12; 15:13; 16:01; 16:02; 16:03; 16:04; 16:05; 16:06; 16:08; 16:09; 16:10; 16:11; 16:14; 16:16; 16:18; 17:01; 17:02; 17:03; 17:05; 17:06; 17:07; 17:08; 17:09; 17:13; 17:14; 18:01; 18:02; 18:03; 18:04; 18:09; 18:13; 19:01; 19:03; 19:04; 19:05; 19:06; 19:07; 19:09; 19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 20:01; 20:02; 20:05; 20:06; 20:09; 20:10; 21:01; 21:02; 21:03; 21:04; 21:05; 21:06; 21:07; 21:09; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 22:01; 22:03; 22:05; 22:06; 22:07; 23:07; 23:08; 24:06; 24:09; 25:03; 25:04; 25:05; 25:07; 26:03; 26:05; 26:09; 27:02; 28:01; 28:08; 30:07; 32:06; 32:11; 33:08; 34:07; 34:09; 34:10; 35:08; 37:01; 37:04; 37:08; 38:01; 38:12; 39:04; 39:07; 39:10; 40:04; 40:07; 40:08; 42:04; 42:11; 43:04; 43:06; 43:07; 43:09; 43:11; 43:13; 44:03; 44:05; 44:08; 45:02; 45:03; 45:07; 46:04; 47:01; 47:02; 47:04; 47:08; 48:01; 48:02; 48:03; 48:04; 48:05; 48:06; 48:07; 48:08; 48:09; 48:10; 48:11; 48:12; 48:13; 49:02; 49:09; 49:10; 49:11; 49:12; 49:13; 49:14; 49:15; 49:16; 49:17; 49:18; 50:02; 50:09; 50:13; 50:14; 50:15; 50:16)

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [24:09](#); [29:09](#); [37:09](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [40:02](#); [40:07](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:08](#); [50:10](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [10:02](#); [12:03](#); [13:04](#); [13:05](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [14:02](#); [14:03](#); [16:01](#); [16:03](#); [16:06](#); [16:07](#); [16:16](#); [18:03](#); [18:09](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:02](#); [19:16](#); [20:05](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/ message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [26:03](#); [46:10](#); [47:01](#); [47:11](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [49:06](#); [50:01](#); [50:02](#); [50:03](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [01:02](#); [01:04](#); [01:05](#); [01:06](#); [01:07](#); [01:08](#); [01:11](#); [01:12](#); [01:15](#); [02:03](#); [02:04](#); [02:12](#); [08:12](#); [18:13](#); [28:01](#); [33:05](#); [33:09](#); [36:04](#); [50:05](#); [50:06](#); [50:08](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [32:04](#); [37:06](#); [37:07](#); [40:09](#); [41:01](#); [41:02](#); [41:03](#); [41:04](#); [41:05](#))

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I find no **guilt** in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "He is not **guilty**." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not **guilty**!"
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Don't you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: [19:16](#); [39:02](#); [39:11](#); [40:04](#); [49:10](#))

Hagar

Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [Ishmael](#), [Sarah](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:09
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:01** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **05:02 Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

([Go back to: 05:01](#); [05:02](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [04:02](#); [04:07](#); [23:07](#); [24:08](#); [28:04](#); [30:07](#); [34:09](#); [37:09](#); [39:04](#); [41:04](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:01](#); [43:02](#); [50:03](#); [50:16](#))

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), Hades, abyss)

Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [50:14](#); [50:15](#))

high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [13:08](#); [16:16](#); [21:07](#); [38:03](#); [38:15](#); [39:01](#); [39:03](#); [39:04](#); [39:05](#); [44:07](#); [45:02](#); [45:03](#); [46:01](#); [48:06](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [01:01](#); [22:02](#); [22:05](#); [23:02](#); [24:08](#); [24:09](#); [25:01](#); [26:01](#); [26:03](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:03](#); [43:05](#); [43:08](#); [43:11](#); [45:01](#); [45:03](#); [45:07](#); [45:12](#); [46:05](#); [46:10](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [01:16](#); [09:12](#); [13:02](#); [13:05](#); [22:05](#); [50:02](#))

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [17:02](#); [34:10](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, "Father, I want my **inheritance** now!" So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [04:06](#); [27:01](#); [35:03](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [08:06](#); [40:04](#); [40:08](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: [05:04](#); [05:05](#); [05:06](#); [05:07](#); [05:08](#); [05:09](#); [06:01](#); [06:03](#); [06:04](#); [06:05](#); [07:01](#); [07:03](#); [07:04](#); [07:06](#); [07:10](#); [08:15](#); [09:13](#); [09:14](#); [14:02](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#); [48:08](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), Hezekiah, Jotham, [Judah](#), [prophet](#), Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

(Go back to: [21:09](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [26:02](#); [45:08](#); [45:09](#))

Ishmael, Ishmaelite

Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
- God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son with whom God had promised to establish his covenant.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Hagar](#), [Isaac](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Paran](#), [Sarah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:01
- Genesis 16:12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 37:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:02** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **05:04** "I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3458, H3459

(Go back to: [05:02](#); [05:04](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [06:07](#); [07:01](#); [07:02](#); [07:03](#); [07:04](#); [07:05](#); [07:06](#); [07:07](#); [07:08](#); [07:09](#); [07:10](#); [08:01](#); [08:03](#); [08:10](#); [08:11](#); [08:14](#); [08:15](#); [09:13](#); [09:14](#); [14:02](#); [14:12](#); [19:10](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [08:15](#); [09:01](#); [09:02](#); [09:03](#); [09:04](#); [09:05](#); [09:07](#); [09:08](#); [09:13](#); [10:01](#); [10:03](#); [10:04](#); [10:05](#); [10:06](#); [10:07](#); [10:09](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [11:01](#); [11:03](#); [11:04](#); [11:05](#); [11:08](#); [12:01](#); [12:03](#); [12:04](#); [12:05](#); [12:06](#); [12:08](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [13:01](#); [13:02](#); [13:08](#); [13:15](#); [14:01](#); [14:03](#); [14:04](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [15:01](#); [15:02](#); [15:04](#); [15:05](#); [15:06](#); [15:07](#); [15:08](#); [15:09](#); [15:11](#); [15:12](#); [15:13](#); [16:01](#); [16:02](#); [16:04](#); [16:05](#); [16:08](#); [16:09](#); [16:10](#); [16:14](#); [16:16](#);

17:01; 17:02; 17:03; 17:05; 17:06; 17:07; 17:08; 18:01; 18:04; 18:05; 18:07; 18:08; 19:01; 19:10; 20:03; 20:04; 20:11;
21:05; 21:07; 26:05; 26:06; 43:06; 48:09; 48:11; 48:14)

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [rebel](#), [suffer](#), [well](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:02
- Jeremiah 11:01
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

(Go back to: [19:17](#); [21:05](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [15:01](#); [15:03](#); [15:05](#); [27:04](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:02
- 2 Chronicles 09:29
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Amos 01:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:09 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [18:08](#); [18:09](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [17:05](#); [18:02](#); [20:07](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [27:04](#); [36:03](#); [38:01](#); [38:02](#); [38:04](#); [42:02](#); [42:05](#); [42:08](#); [42:11](#); [43:01](#); [43:02](#); [43:04](#); [43:12](#); [45:06](#); [45:07](#); [46:01](#); [46:08](#); [46:09](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [23:02](#); [23:05](#); [23:08](#); [23:09](#); [23:10](#); [24:06](#); [24:07](#); [24:08](#); [24:09](#); [25:01](#); [25:02](#); [25:03](#); [25:04](#); [25:05](#); [25:06](#); [25:07](#); [25:08](#); [26:01](#); [26:02](#); [26:04](#); [26:05](#); [26:06](#); [26:07](#); [26:08](#); [26:09](#); [26:10](#); [27:01](#); [27:02](#); [27:04](#); [27:11](#); [28:01](#); [28:02](#); [28:03](#); [28:04](#); [28:05](#); [28:06](#); [28:08](#); [28:09](#); [28:10](#); [29:01](#); [29:09](#); [30:01](#); [30:02](#); [30:03](#); [30:04](#); [30:05](#); [30:06](#); [30:07](#); [30:08](#); [31:01](#); [31:04](#); [31:05](#); [31:06](#); [31:07](#); [31:08](#); [32:01](#); [32:02](#); [32:05](#); [32:06](#); [32:07](#); [32:09](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#); [32:12](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [32:15](#); [32:16](#); [33:01](#); [33:02](#); [33:06](#); [34:01](#); [34:03](#); [34:06](#); [34:10](#); [35:01](#); [35:02](#); [36:01](#); [36:02](#); [36:03](#); [36:04](#); [36:06](#); [36:07](#); [37:01](#); [37:02](#); [37:03](#); [37:04](#); [37:05](#); [37:06](#); [37:07](#); [37:08](#); [37:09](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#); [38:01](#); [38:02](#); [38:03](#); [38:04](#); [38:05](#); [38:06](#); [38:08](#); [38:09](#); [38:10](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#); [38:14](#); [38:15](#); [39:01](#); [39:02](#); [39:03](#); [39:04](#); [39:05](#); [39:06](#); [39:07](#); [39:08](#); [39:09](#); [39:10](#); [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [40:01](#); [40:02](#); [40:03](#); [40:04](#); [40:05](#); [40:07](#); [40:08](#); [40:09](#); [41:01](#); [41:03](#); [41:05](#); [41:06](#); [41:08](#); [42:01](#); [42:02](#); [42:03](#); [42:04](#); [42:05](#); [42:06](#); [42:07](#); [42:10](#); [42:11](#); [43:01](#); [43:02](#); [43:06](#); [43:07](#); [43:08](#); [43:09](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [44:02](#); [44:04](#); [44:05](#); [44:08](#); [44:09](#); [45:01](#); [45:02](#); [45:03](#); [45:05](#); [45:06](#); [45:07](#); [45:12](#); [45:13](#); [46:01](#); [46:05](#); [46:06](#); [46:07](#); [46:09](#); [46:10](#); [47:01](#); [47:02](#); [47:05](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [48:04](#); [48:05](#); [48:06](#); [48:07](#); [48:08](#); [48:10](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [49:01](#); [49:02](#); [49:03](#); [49:06](#); [49:09](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#); [49:12](#); [49:13](#); [49:14](#); [49:15](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#); [50:01](#); [50:02](#); [50:03](#); [50:04](#); [50:05](#); [50:08](#); [50:11](#); [50:12](#); [50:13](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#); [50:17](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [20:11](#); [20:12](#); [24:05](#); [26:06](#); [27:04](#); [27:06](#); [27:07](#); [27:08](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#); [38:01](#); [38:07](#); [41:03](#); [43:02](#); [45:02](#); [46:06](#); [46:07](#); [46:09](#))

Jewish authorities, Jewish leader

Facts:

The term “Jewish leader” or “Jewish authority” refers to religious leaders such as the priests and teachers of God’s laws. They also had the authority to make judgments about non-religious matters as well.

- The Jewish leaders were the high priests, chief priests, and scribes (teachers of God’s laws).
- Two main groups of Jewish leaders were the Pharisees and Sadducees.
- Seventy Jewish leaders met together in the Jewish Council in Jerusalem to make judgments about matters of law.
- Many Jewish leaders were proud and thought they were righteous. They were jealous of Jesus and wanted to harm him. They claimed to know God but did not obey him.
- Often the phrase “the Jews” referred to the Jewish leaders, especially in contexts where they were angry at Jesus and were trying to trick or harm him.
- These terms could also be translated as “Jewish rulers” or “men who ruled over the Jewish people” or “Jewish religious leaders.”

(See also: [Jew](#), council, [high priest](#), Pharisee, [priest](#), Sadducee, scribe)

Bible References:

- Exodus 16:22-23
- John 02:19
- John 05:10-11
- John 05:16
- Luke 19:47-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** Many **religious leaders** also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **37:11** But the **religious leaders of the Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the **Jewish leaders** denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **38:03** The **Jewish leaders**, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:05** The **Jewish leaders** all answered the high priest, “He (Jesus) deserves to die!”
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the **Jewish leaders** brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor.
- **39:11** But the **Jewish leaders** and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!”
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two **Jewish leaders** who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body.
- **44:07** The next day, the **Jewish leaders** brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other **religious leaders**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2453

(Go back to: [24:03](#); [24:04](#); [27:06](#); [34:06](#); [34:07](#); [34:09](#); [34:10](#); [35:02](#); [37:11](#); [38:02](#); [38:03](#); [38:14](#); [39:02](#); [39:04](#); [39:05](#); [39:08](#); [39:09](#); [39:11](#); [40:05](#); [40:09](#); [41:01](#); [44:07](#); [44:09](#); [45:02](#); [45:04](#))

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), reveal, James (son of Zebedee), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\
- **44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\
- **44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\
- **44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

(Go back to: [36:01](#); [44:01](#); [44:06](#); [44:07](#); [44:09](#))

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

(Go back to: [22:02](#); [22:07](#); [24:01](#); [24:02](#); [24:03](#); [24:04](#); [24:05](#); [24:06](#); [24:07](#); [24:09](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [15:02](#); [15:03](#); [19:14](#); [19:15](#))

Joseph (NT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#), [Nazareth](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 02:4-5
- Luke 02:15-16
- Matthew 01:18-19
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:01 Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:03** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:04 Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:04** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2501

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [23:01](#); [23:02](#); [23:03](#); [23:04](#); [26:04](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [08:01](#); [08:02](#); [08:03](#); [08:04](#); [08:05](#); [08:06](#); [08:07](#); [08:08](#); [08:09](#); [08:11](#); [08:12](#); [09:01](#); [09:02](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [14:06](#); [14:07](#); [14:08](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [15:01](#); [15:02](#); [15:03](#); [15:06](#); [15:07](#); [15:08](#); [15:11](#); [15:13](#); [16:01](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [33:07](#); [34:04](#); [41:07](#); [47:12](#))

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: Judah, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:08
- Hosea 05:14
- Jeremiah 07:33
- Judges 01:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063

(Go back to: [18:07](#); [18:09](#); [18:10](#); [18:13](#); [20:01](#); [20:05](#); [20:06](#); [20:07](#); [20:08](#); [20:09](#))

Judas Iscariot

Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerieth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- One of the other apostles of Jesus was Judas son of James. He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.
- One of Jesus' brothers was named Judas. He was later known as "Jude." He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), [Jewish leaders](#), Judas the son of James)

Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

(Go back to: [38:02](#); [38:03](#); [38:06](#); [38:07](#); [38:14](#); [39:08](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [18:01](#); [19:16](#); [21:08](#); [39:04](#); [50:14](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [17:09](#); [18:13](#); [19:16](#); [48:14](#); [50:17](#))

King of the Jews

Definition:

The term “King of the Jews” is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was “King of the Jews.”
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus “King of the Jews.” This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus’ cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “King of the Jews” could also be translated as “king over the Jews” or “king who rules over the Jews” or “supreme ruler of the Jews.”
- Check to see how the phrase “king of” is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [wise men](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:09** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:09** Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the **King of the Jews?**”
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the **King of the Jews!**”
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, “**King of the Jews**” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G935, G2453

(Go back to: [23:09](#); [39:09](#); [39:12](#); [40:02](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [08:06](#); [15:07](#); [16:01](#); [16:15](#); [16:18](#); [17:01](#); [17:02](#); [17:04](#); [17:05](#); [17:07](#); [18:05](#); [18:08](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:02](#); [19:13](#); [19:17](#); [20:06](#); [20:08](#); [20:11](#); [21:06](#); [21:08](#); [29:02](#); [29:03](#); [29:04](#); [29:07](#); [29:08](#); [48:14](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [13:02](#); [18:04](#); [18:08](#); [18:10](#); [21:08](#); [25:06](#); [39:10](#); [49:15](#); [50:15](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God!** Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God.**”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God.** For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [24:02](#); [28:06](#); [29:02](#); [34:01](#); [34:03](#); [34:04](#); [34:05](#); [39:10](#); [40:04](#); [48:14](#); [49:06](#); [49:15](#); [50:02](#); [50:08](#); [50:10](#); [50:17](#))

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18
- Jeremiah 05:11
- Jeremiah 09:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

(Go back to: [18:08](#); [18:10](#); [18:12](#); [19:02](#); [19:05](#); [19:06](#); [20:01](#); [20:02](#); [20:03](#); [20:04](#); [20:05](#); [20:06](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: [05:07](#); [11:02](#); [11:03](#); [11:05](#); [12:14](#); [24:06](#); [45:08](#); [48:08](#); [48:09](#); [48:10](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [13:07](#); [13:09](#); [15:13](#); [16:01](#); [27:01](#); [27:02](#); [28:01](#); [28:03](#))

Lazarus

Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

- Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
- The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
- Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was a different man named "Lazarus."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beg](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Martha](#), [Mary](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- John 11:11
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 16:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **37:01** One day, Jesus received a message that **Lazarus** was very sick. **Lazarus** and his two sisters, Mary and Martha, were close friends of Jesus.
- **37:02** Jesus said, "Our friend **Lazarus** has fallen asleep, and I must wake him."
- **37:03** Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if **Lazarus** is sleeping, then he will get better." Then Jesus told them plainly, "**Lazarus** is dead."
- **37:04** When Jesus arrived at **Lazarus'** hometown, **Lazarus** had already been dead for four days.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put **Lazarus**?"
- **37:09** Then Jesus shouted, "**Lazarus**, come out!"
- **37:10** So **Lazarus** came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and **Lazarus**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2976

(Go back to: [37:01](#); [37:02](#); [37:03](#); [37:04](#); [37:06](#); [37:09](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [01:10](#); [01:11](#); [02:12](#); [27:02](#); [35:09](#); [35:13](#); [36:07](#); [37:05](#); [42:01](#); [42:05](#); [43:07](#); [44:05](#); [44:08](#); [45:08](#); [48:04](#); [49:09](#); [49:12](#); [50:12](#); [50:13](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [23:06](#); [25:05](#); [25:07](#); [26:03](#); [27:02](#); [29:01](#); [31:05](#); [31:07](#); [37:03](#); [37:04](#); [37:05](#); [37:06](#); [43:09](#); [45:05](#); [46:02](#); [46:04](#); [47:03](#); [47:11](#); [49:13](#); [49:17](#); [50:04](#); [50:06](#); [50:07](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [17:04](#); [17:05](#); [24:08](#); [27:02](#); [28:02](#); [28:03](#); [33:08](#); [36:05](#); [37:01](#); [39:10](#); [47:01](#); [48:01](#); [49:03](#); [49:09](#); [49:13](#))

Mary, the mother of Jesus

Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cana, [Egypt](#), Herod the Great, [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [22:05](#); [22:06](#); [23:01](#); [23:02](#); [23:03](#); [23:04](#); [23:08](#); [49:01](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [20:12](#); [27:11](#); [32:11](#); [34:09](#))

Midian, Midianite

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, [Egypt](#), flock, [Gideon](#), Jethro, [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 07:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:04** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

(Go back to: [16:03](#); [16:04](#); [16:05](#); [16:08](#); [16:09](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [19:14](#); [37:10](#); [43:06](#); [45:01](#); [49:02](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

(Go back to: [39:05](#); [39:12](#); [40:01](#); [40:04](#); [40:05](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [09:07](#); [09:08](#); [09:10](#); [09:11](#); [09:12](#); [09:14](#); [09:15](#); [10:01](#); [10:04](#); [10:05](#); [10:07](#); [10:08](#); [11:08](#); [12:05](#); [12:07](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [13:01](#); [13:02](#); [13:03](#); [13:07](#); [13:09](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [14:04](#); [14:07](#); [14:09](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [17:06](#); [21:03](#); [36:03](#); [36:04](#); [45:02](#); [48:12](#))

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
- 2 Kings 05:01
- Luke 04:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:06** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G3497

(Go back to: [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [26:06](#))

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G3481

(Go back to: [17:07](#); [17:13](#))

Nazareth, Nazarene

Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3478, G3479, G3480

(Go back to: [23:04](#); [26:02](#); [26:07](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [20:06](#); [20:08](#); [20:09](#))

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 08:08
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **09:04** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **09:06** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **10:03** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H2975, H4714, H5104

(Go back to: [08:04](#); [09:04](#); [09:06](#); [10:03](#))

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:08
- Genesis 08:01
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

(Go back to: [03:02](#); [03:03](#); [03:04](#); [03:06](#); [03:10](#); [03:11](#); [03:12](#); [03:13](#); [03:14](#))

obey, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, command, [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *_obeyed_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [03:04](#); [04:05](#); [05:06](#); [05:10](#); [11:01](#); [13:02](#); [13:07](#); [13:10](#); [14:02](#); [14:03](#); [14:15](#); [15:03](#); [15:13](#); [16:01](#); [17:01](#); [17:02](#); [17:13](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [20:01](#); [20:05](#); [28:01](#); [28:03](#); [38:15](#); [42:10](#); [49:17](#); [50:15](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [12:14](#); [38:01](#); [38:04](#); [43:02](#); [48:09](#); [48:10](#))

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [christian](#), [jewish leaders](#), [rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: [45:06](#); [46:01](#); [46:02](#); [46:03](#); [46:04](#); [46:05](#); [46:06](#); [46:07](#); [46:08](#); [46:09](#); [46:10](#); [47:01](#); [47:02](#); [47:03](#); [47:04](#); [47:05](#); [47:07](#); [47:08](#); [47:10](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [07:10](#); [14:03](#); [15:06](#); [15:07](#); [15:12](#); [16:03](#); [21:13](#); [23:07](#); [32:16](#); [42:06](#); [48:14](#); [50:13](#); [50:17](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: [descendant](#), nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."

- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [14:02](#); [21:02](#); [42:08](#); [42:10](#); [48:07](#); [48:11](#); [50:03](#))

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), oppress, [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [33:07](#); [45:06](#); [45:07](#); [46:01](#); [46:02](#); [46:04](#); [46:09](#))

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

(Go back to: [28:09](#); [29:01](#); [31:05](#); [31:06](#); [31:07](#); [31:08](#); [36:01](#); [36:04](#); [36:05](#); [38:09](#); [38:10](#); [38:15](#); [39:01](#); [39:06](#); [39:07](#); [39:08](#); [43:05](#); [43:10](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [44:01](#); [44:02](#); [44:04](#); [44:06](#); [44:07](#); [44:08](#); [44:09](#))

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

(Go back to: [08:06](#); [08:07](#); [08:08](#); [09:02](#); [09:04](#); [09:07](#); [09:10](#); [09:13](#); [09:15](#); [10:01](#); [10:02](#); [10:03](#); [10:04](#); [10:05](#); [10:06](#); [10:07](#); [10:08](#); [10:09](#); [10:12](#); [11:01](#); [11:07](#); [11:08](#); [12:03](#); [12:04](#))

Philippi, Philippians

Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. People in Philippi were called Philippians.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: Caesarea, [Christian](#), [church](#), Macedonia, [Paul](#), [Silas](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- Acts 16:11
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 01:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5374, G5375

(Go back to: [47:01](#); [47:13](#))

Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: [39:09](#); [39:10](#); [39:11](#); [39:12](#); [40:02](#); [40:09](#); [41:01](#); [41:02](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [22:05](#); [26:01](#); [32:15](#); [42:11](#); [43:06](#); [44:04](#); [44:07](#); [44:08](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [12:13](#); [17:03](#); [17:08](#); [22:07](#); [23:08](#); [43:13](#); [44:03](#); [47:08](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [10:08](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [19:08](#); [19:10](#); [21:07](#); [31:01](#); [31:02](#); [34:06](#); [34:09](#); [34:10](#); [36:02](#); [38:09](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#); [43:01](#); [43:13](#); [46:10](#); [47:03](#); [49:18](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [24:02](#); [30:01](#); [38:01](#); [45:06](#); [45:07](#); [46:06](#); [46:07](#); [46:08](#); [46:10](#); [47:11](#); [47:14](#); [50:02](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [04:07](#); [13:02](#); [13:09](#); [15:02](#); [15:03](#); [15:04](#); [19:07](#); [21:06](#); [21:07](#); [22:01](#); [27:06](#); [27:07](#); [48:06](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [03:15](#); [03:16](#); [04:08](#); [05:04](#); [05:10](#); [06:04](#); [07:10](#); [08:15](#); [09:13](#); [13:07](#); [13:10](#); [14:02](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [15:01](#); [15:07](#); [15:13](#); [17:08](#); [17:14](#); [18:04](#); [19:18](#); [20:10](#); [21:01](#); [21:03](#); [21:04](#); [21:05](#); [43:08](#); [48:04](#); [48:13](#); [50:01](#); [50:13](#))

Promised Land

Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Promised Land" can be translated as the "land that God said he would give to Abraham" or "land that God promised to Abraham" or "land God promised to his people" or "land of Canaan."
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of "the land God promised."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [12:01](#); [13:15](#); [14:01](#); [14:02](#); [14:03](#); [14:08](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [15:01](#); [15:02](#); [15:12](#); [20:09](#); [20:10](#); [20:13](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [12:12](#); [14:14](#); [17:07](#); [17:13](#); [19:01](#); [19:02](#); [19:06](#); [19:07](#); [19:08](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [19:18](#); [20:01](#); [20:05](#); [20:10](#); [21:03](#); [21:05](#); [21:06](#); [21:09](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [22:01](#); [22:07](#); [24:01](#); [24:04](#); [26:02](#); [26:05](#); [26:06](#); [36:03](#); [38:03](#); [40:03](#); [42:03](#); [43:05](#); [43:07](#); [44:05](#); [45:03](#); [48:12](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshipped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshipped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, **Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshipped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [13:04](#); [13:05](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [14:02](#); [14:03](#); [16:01](#); [16:03](#); [16:11](#); [16:16](#); [17:06](#); [18:02](#); [18:03](#); [18:09](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:02](#); [19:05](#); [19:16](#); [20:01](#); [20:05](#); [20:13](#); [23:10](#); [25:06](#); [25:07](#); [26:02](#); [26:07](#); [26:09](#); [31:08](#); [41:08](#); [47:01](#); [49:18](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [04:02](#); [34:10](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [13:07](#); [16:02](#); [16:16](#); [17:14](#); [18:04](#); [18:06](#); [19:16](#); [20:02](#); [20:05](#); [20:08](#); [20:10](#); [21:07](#); [21:13](#); [48:06](#); [48:10](#); [49:09](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#); [49:14](#))

Rahab

Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), prostitute)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25
- Joshua 02:21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:05** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

(Go back to: [15:01](#); [15:05](#))

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [21:14](#); [41:01](#); [41:05](#); [41:06](#); [42:01](#); [42:03](#); [42:07](#); [43:07](#); [44:05](#); [44:08](#); [48:04](#); [49:02](#); [49:12](#); [50:11](#); [50:12](#))

Rebekah

Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Aram, [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), Nahor, Negev)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:02** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **06:06** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **07:01** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **07:06** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

(Go back to: [06:02](#); [06:03](#); [06:04](#); [06:05](#); [06:06](#); [06:07](#); [07:01](#); [07:03](#); [07:06](#); [07:07](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [14:14](#); [18:07](#); [18:09](#); [18:13](#); [20:07](#); [45:03](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [21:13](#); [42:08](#); [45:05](#); [49:06](#); [49:10](#); [49:13](#))

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 01:07

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:05** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:06 Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G4497

(Go back to: [18:05](#); [18:06](#); [18:07](#); [18:08](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [16:02](#); [17:13](#); [19:18](#); [20:01](#); [24:02](#); [24:03](#); [24:04](#); [42:08](#); [43:11](#); [44:05](#))

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: [21:14](#); [37:05](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [03:02](#); [04:08](#); [17:02](#); [23:01](#); [27:03](#); [34:10](#); [50:10](#))

Rome, Roman

Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term “Roman” referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of “Romans” is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), the sea, [Pilate](#), [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4514, G4516

(Go back to: [23:04](#); [39:09](#); [39:12](#); [44:05](#); [47:01](#); [47:07](#); [47:10](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [13:05](#); [26:02](#); [41:03](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [03:06](#); [03:14](#); [05:06](#); [05:07](#); [05:08](#); [05:09](#); [13:09](#); [13:12](#); [16:06](#); [17:06](#); [18:02](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [19:07](#); [19:09](#); [21:07](#); [38:04](#); [48:06](#); [48:08](#); [49:11](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), Judea, Sharon, [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: [20:04](#); [27:08](#); [27:09](#); [27:10](#); [45:07](#))

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:01** "So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **05:04** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son--he will be the son of promise."
- **05:04** "God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **05:05** "About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G4564

(Go back to: [04:05](#); [04:08](#); [05:01](#); [05:02](#); [05:04](#); [05:05](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [21:01](#); [25:01](#); [25:02](#); [25:04](#); [25:05](#); [25:06](#); [25:07](#); [25:08](#); [26:01](#); [33:06](#); [38:07](#); [38:09](#); [48:02](#); [48:04](#); [49:15](#); [50:04](#); [50:09](#); [50:10](#); [50:15](#))

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:01
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 018:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:01 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:04 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

(Go back to: [17:01](#); [17:02](#); [17:04](#); [17:05](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [09:08](#); [11:02](#); [11:05](#); [12:05](#); [12:13](#); [13:04](#); [16:04](#); [16:08](#); [16:09](#); [16:14](#); [21:02](#); [21:14](#); [23:02](#); [28:07](#); [31:07](#); [38:01](#); [40:05](#); [44:08](#); [45:07](#); [47:04](#); [47:11](#); [48:05](#); [48:07](#); [49:06](#); [49:12](#); [49:13](#); [50:04](#))

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: Arabia. [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:05** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

(Go back to: [12:04](#); [12:05](#); [13:01](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant": a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [04:05](#); [05:01](#); [06:01](#); [06:02](#); [06:03](#); [07:08](#); [07:09](#); [08:02](#); [08:04](#); [08:12](#); [09:02](#); [09:08](#); [09:13](#); [12:01](#); [12:03](#); [12:04](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [13:04](#); [14:07](#); [19:10](#); [20:06](#); [29:02](#); [29:03](#); [29:04](#); [29:05](#); [29:06](#); [29:07](#); [29:08](#); [35:06](#); [35:09](#); [38:01](#); [38:15](#); [39:06](#); [39:10](#); [47:03](#); [47:04](#); [47:05](#); [47:06](#); [47:07](#); [49:17](#); [50:04](#); [50:06](#); [50:07](#))

shepherd, chief shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.

- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: [09:11](#); [17:02](#); [23:06](#); [23:08](#); [30:03](#); [38:08](#))

Silas, Silvanus

Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Antioch, [Barnabas](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [Philippi](#), prison, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:01
- Acts 15:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:02** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:03** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:07** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:08** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4609, G4610

(Go back to: [47:01](#); [47:02](#); [47:03](#); [47:07](#); [47:08](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), flesh, [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [02:01](#); [03:15](#); [04:02](#); [08:05](#); [10:08](#); [10:09](#); [13:09](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [14:09](#); [17:07](#); [17:09](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [18:09](#); [20:01](#); [20:10](#); [21:05](#); [21:07](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [22:07](#); [23:02](#); [24:03](#); [24:06](#); [24:07](#); [25:01](#); [29:01](#); [34:07](#); [34:09](#); [35:01](#); [35:02](#); [35:04](#); [35:08](#); [35:12](#); [38:05](#); [38:12](#); [42:08](#); [43:11](#); [44:05](#); [45:05](#); [48:01](#); [48:02](#); [48:03](#); [48:05](#); [48:06](#); [48:08](#); [48:10](#); [49:09](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#); [49:16](#); [49:17](#); [50:16](#))

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, [Egypt](#), [Horeb](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

(Go back to: [13:01](#); [13:03](#); [13:11](#); [13:15](#); [14:01](#); [15:13](#); [20:01](#); [21:05](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [17:14](#); [18:01](#); [18:02](#); [18:03](#); [18:04](#); [18:05](#); [18:06](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), ancestor, firstborn, [Son of God](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [04:08](#); [04:09](#); [05:04](#); [05:05](#); [05:06](#); [05:08](#); [05:10](#); [06:01](#); [06:06](#); [06:07](#); [09:07](#); [11:02](#); [17:07](#); [20:08](#); [23:02](#); [35:03](#); [35:07](#); [35:08](#); [35:09](#); [35:11](#); [35:13](#); [48:08](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), ancestor, [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**"
- **24:09** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**"
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God.**"
- **37:05** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**"
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God!**"
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [22:04](#); [22:05](#); [24:08](#); [24:09](#); [25:02](#); [25:04](#); [26:09](#); [31:08](#); [32:06](#); [36:05](#); [37:05](#); [39:03](#); [39:04](#); [40:05](#); [40:08](#); [42:10](#); [46:06](#); [48:13](#); [49:01](#); [49:03](#); [49:09](#); [49:12](#); [49:14](#))

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philipians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [40:07](#); [45:05](#); [48:07](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [09:13](#); [38:12](#); [42:03](#); [42:07](#); [44:05](#); [46:04](#); [50:04](#); [50:10](#); [50:17](#))

tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be

merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

Word Data:

- Tax: Strong’s: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong’s: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

(Go back to: [34:06](#); [34:07](#); [34:09](#); [34:10](#); [35:01](#))

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [27:01](#); [28:01](#); [37:02](#); [38:14](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [17:06](#); [17:07](#); [18:02](#); [18:09](#); [20:07](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [25:04](#); [27:07](#); [34:06](#); [40:07](#); [44:01](#); [44:03](#); [44:06](#))

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: [25:01](#); [25:02](#); [25:08](#); [26:01](#); [38:11](#); [49:17](#))

Ten Commandments

Facts:

The “Ten Commandments” were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

- God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
- These commandments were also part of God’s covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
- The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: ark of the covenant, command, [covenant](#), desert, [law](#), [obey](#), [Sinai](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Deuteronomy 10:3-4
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** Then God wrote these **Ten Commandments** on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.
- **13:13** When Moses came down the mountain and saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the stones on which God had written the **Ten Commandments**.
- **13:15** Moses wrote the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H6235

(Go back to: [13:07](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#))

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), pillar, tabernacle, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:02
- Numbers 04:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4150

(Go back to: [13:08](#); [13:09](#); [14:08](#); [17:06](#); [18:02](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [39:02](#); [39:04](#); [42:08](#); [43:07](#); [45:02](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [02:04](#); [16:01](#); [19:10](#); [26:05](#); [31:08](#); [34:10](#); [39:10](#); [45:03](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [14:15](#); [17:02](#); [34:06](#))

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), Hittite)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:05
- 2 Samuel 11:03
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 03:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H223, G3774

(Go back to: [17:12](#); [17:13](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [21:09](#); [22:04](#); [22:05](#); [49:01](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [02:05](#); [18:01](#); [23:09](#); [45:01](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [25:03](#); [25:05](#); [25:07](#); [26:04](#); [33:06](#); [33:07](#); [33:08](#); [33:09](#); [42:03](#); [42:05](#); [42:07](#); [42:08](#); [48:12](#); [49:06](#); [49:18](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: [09:14](#); [13:04](#); [13:05](#); [16:01](#); [16:05](#); [16:13](#); [19:05](#); [19:06](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#); [23:02](#))

Zechariah (NT)

Facts:

In the New Testament, Zechariah was a Jewish priest who became the father of John the Baptist.

- Zechariah loved God and obeyed him.
- For many years Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, prayed earnestly to have a child, but did not have one. Then when they were very old, God answered their prayers and gave them a son.
- Zechariah prophesied that his son John would be the prophet who would announce and prepare the way for the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), Elizabeth, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 01:39-41
- Luke 03:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:01** Suddenly an angel came with a message from God to an old priest named **Zechariah**. **Zechariah** and his wife, Elizabeth, were godly people, but she had not been able to have any children.
- **22:02** The angel said to **Zechariah**, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him John."
- **22:03** Immediately, **Zechariah** was unable to speak.
- **22:07** Then God allowed **Zechariah** to speak again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2197

(Go back to: [22:01](#); [22:02](#); [22:03](#); [22:07](#); [24:01](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Translation Notes Contributors

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Andrew Belcher
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Contributors

unfoldingWord
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community